

# Elmo: Recursive Virtual Payment Channels for Bitcoin

Anonymised Submission

**Abstract**—A dominant approach towards the solution of the scalability problem in blockchain systems has been the development of layer 2 protocols and specifically payment channel networks (PCNs) such as the Lightning Network (LN) over Bitcoin. Routing payments over LN requires the coordination of all path intermediaries in a multi-hop round trip that encumbers the layer 2 solution both in terms of responsiveness as well as privacy. The issue is resolved by *virtual channel* protocols that, capitalizing on a suitable off-chain setup operation, enable the two endpoints to engage as if they had a direct payment channel between them. Once the channel is unneeded, it can be optimistically closed in an off-chain fashion.

Apart from communication efficiency, virtual channel constructions have three natural desiderata. A virtual channel constructor is *recursive* if it can also be applied on pre-existing virtual channels, *variadic* if it can be applied on any number of pre-existing channels and *symmetric* if it encumbers in an egalitarian fashion all channel participants both in optimistic and pessimistic execution paths. We put forth the first Bitcoin-suitable recursive variadic virtual channel construction. Furthermore our virtual channel constructor is symmetric and offers optimal round complexity for payments, optimistic closing and unilateral closing. We express and prove the security of our construction in the universal composition setting, using a novel induction-based proof technique of independent interest. As an additional contribution, we implement a flexible simulation framework for on- and off-chain payments and compare the efficiency of Elmo with previous virtual channel constructors.

## I. INTRODUCTION

The popularity of blockchain protocols in recent years has stretched their performance exposing a number of scalability considerations. In particular, Bitcoin and related blockchain protocols exhibit very high latency (e.g. Bitcoin has a latency of 1h [48]) and a very low throughput (e.g., Bitcoin can handle at most 7 transactions per second [15]), both significant shortcomings that jeopardize wider use and adoption and are to a certain extent inherent [15]. To address these considerations a prominent approach is to optimistically handle payments via a *Payment Channel Network* (PCN) (see, e.g., [29] for a survey). Payments over a PCN happen *off-chain*, i.e., without adding any transactions to the underlying blockchain. They only use the blockchain as an arbiter in case of dispute.

The key primitive of PCN protocols is a payment channel. Two parties initiate the channel by locking some funds on-chain and subsequently exchange direct messages to update

the state of the channel. The key feature is that state updates are not posted on-chain and hence they remain unencumbered by the performance limitations of the underlying blockchain protocol, making them a natural choice for parties that interact often. Multiple overlapping payment channels can be combined and form the PCN.

Closing a channel is an operation that involves posting the state of the channel on-chain. Closing should be efficient, i.e., needing  $O(1)$  on-chain transactions, independent of the number of payments that have occurred off-chain. It is also essential that any party can unilaterally close a channel as otherwise a malicious counterparty (i.e., the other channel participant) could prevent an honest party from accessing their funds. This functionality however raises an important design consideration: how to prevent malicious parties from posting old states of the channel. Addressing this issue can be done with some suitable use of transaction *timelocks*, a feature that prevents a transaction or a specific script from being processed on-chain prior to a specific time (measured in block height). For instance, diminishing transaction timelocks facilitated the Duplex Micropayment Channels (DMC) [19] at the expense of bounding the overall lifetime of a channel. Using script timelocks, the Lightning Network (LN) [51] provided a better solution that enabled channels staying open for an arbitrary duration: the key idea was to duplicate the state of the channel between the two counterparties, say Alice and Bob, and facilitate a punishment mechanism that can be triggered by Bob whenever Alice posts an old state update and vice-versa. The script timelocking is essential to allow an honest counterparty some time to act.

Interconnecting channels in LN enables any two parties to transmit funds to each other as long as they can find a route of payment channels that connects them. The downside of this mechanism is that it requires the direct involvement of all the parties along the path for each payment. Instead, *virtual payment channels*, suggest the more attractive approach of putting a one-time off-chain initialization step to set up a virtual payment channel, which subsequently can be used for direct payments with complexity—in the optimistic case—independent of the length of the path. When the virtual channel has exhausted its usefulness, it can be closed off-chain if the involved parties cooperate. Initial constructions for virtual channels essentially capitalized on the extended functionality of Ethereum, e.g., Perun [23] and GSCN [25], while more recent work [3] brought them closer to Bitcoin-compatibility (by leveraging adaptor signatures [2]).

A virtual channel constructor can be thought of as an *operator* over the underlying primitive of a state channel. We can identify three natural desiderata for this operator.

- **Recursive.** A recursive virtual channel constructor can

operate over channels that themselves could be the results of previous applications of the operator. This is important in the context of PCNs since it allows building virtual channels on top of pre-existing virtual channels, allowing the channel structure to evolve dynamically.

- **Variadic.** A variadic virtual channel constructor can virtualize any number of input state channels directly, i.e., without leveraging recursion, contrary to a *binary* constructor. This is important in the context of PCNs since it enables applying the operator to build virtual channels of arbitrary length, without the undue overhead of opening, managing and closing multiple virtual channels only to use the one at the “top” of the recursion.
- **Symmetric.** A symmetric virtual channel constructor offers setup and closing operations that are symmetric in terms of computation, network and storage cost between the two *endpoints* or the *intermediaries* (but not a mix of both) for the optimistic and pessimistic execution paths. Importantly, this ensures that no party is worse-off or better-off after an application of the operator in terms of accessing the basic functionality of the channel.

Endpoints are the two parties that share the channel and intermediaries are the parties of any of the underlying channels.

We note that recursiveness, while identified already as an important design property [25], has not been achieved for Bitcoin-compatible channels (it was achieved only for DMC-like fixed lifetime channels in [31] and left as an open question for LN-type channels in [3]). This is because of the severe limitations imposed by the scripting language of Bitcoin-compatible systems. With respect to the other two properties, observe that successive applications of a recursive binary virtual channel operator to connect distant endpoints will break symmetry (since the sequence of operator applications will impact the participants’ functions with respect to the resulting channel). This is of particular concern since most previous virtual channel constructors proposed are binary [25], [3], [31].

The primary motivation for recursive channels is offering more flexibility in moving off-chain coins quickly and at a low cost, even under consistently congested ledger conditions. Without recursiveness, one would have to first close its virtual channel on-chain in order to then use some of its coins with another party, which is as slow as any on-chain transaction, in case of high congestion could become prohibitively expensive, and needs closing the entire channel even if only a few coins are needed. On the other hand, a recursive virtual channel allows using some of its coins with other parties by off-chain opening a new virtual channel on top, and even keeping the remaining coins in the initial channel. This flexibility may can more confidence in virtual channels, prompting users to transfer more coins off-chain and ultimately reducing on-chain congestion.

**a) Our Contributions:** We present the first Bitcoin-suitable recursive virtual channel constructor that supports channels with an indefinite lifetime. In addition, our constructor, Elmo (named after St. Elmo’s fire), is variadic and symmetric. In our constructor, both optimistic and pessimistic execution paths are optimal in terms of round complexity: issuing payments between the two endpoints requires just three messages of size independent of the length of the channel, closing the

channel cooperatively requires at most three messages from each party while closing the channel unilaterally requires up to two on-chain transactions for any involved party (endpoint or intermediary) that can be submitted simultaneously, also independent of the channel’s length. Our construction can also be adapted for any blockchain that supports Turing-complete smart contracts, such as Ethereum [57].

We achieve the above by leveraging a sophisticated virtual channel setup protocol which, on the one hand, enables endpoints to use an interface that is invariant between on-chain and off-chain (i.e., virtual) channels, while on the other, parties can securely close the channel cooperatively off-chain, or instead opt for unilateral on-chain closing, following an arbitrary activation sequence. The latter is achieved by enabling anyone to become an initiator towards closing the channel, while subsequent respondents, following the activation sequence, can choose the right action to successfully complete the closure process by posting a single transaction each.

We formally prove the security of the constructor protocol in the Universal Composition (UC) [12] setting; our ideal functionality is global, as defined in [7]. The protocol requires the ANYPREVOUT signature type (slated for inclusion in the next Bitcoin update<sup>1</sup>), which does not sign the hash of the transaction it spends, thus enabling a single pre-signed transaction to spend any output with a suitable script. We conjecture that without ANYPREVOUT no efficient off-chain virtual channel constructor over Bitcoin can be built. In particular, if any such protocol (i) offers an efficient closing operation (i.e., with  $O(1)$  on-chain transactions), (ii) has parties store the channel state as transactions and signatures in their local storage and (iii) does not require locking on-chain coins (unlike [4]), then each party will need exponentially large space in the number of intermediaries. Note that the second protocol requirement is natural, since, to our knowledge, all trustless layer 2 protocols over Bitcoin require all implicated protocol parties to actively sign off every state transition and locally store the relevant transactions and signatures of their counterparties, thus ensuring their ability to unilaterally exit later.

**b) Related work:** The first proposal for PCNs [56] only enabled unidirectional payment channels. As mentioned previously, DMCs [19] with their decrementing timelocks have the shortcoming of limited channel lifetime. This was ameliorated by LN [51] which has become the dominant paradigm for designing Bitcoin-compatible PCNs. LN is currently implemented and operational for Bitcoin. It has also been adapted for Ethereum [57], named Raiden Network.

Various attacks have been identified against LN. The worm-hole attack [43] against LN allows colluding parties in a multi-hop payment to steal the fees of the intermediaries between them and Flood & Loot attacks [30] analyses an attack in which too many channels are forced to close in a short amount of time, harming blockchain liveness and enabling a malicious party to steal off-chain funds.

To the best of our knowledge, no formal treatment of the privacy of LN exists. Nevertheless, it intuitively improves upon the privacy of on-chain Bitcoin transactions, as LN

<sup>1</sup><https://anyprevout.xyz/>

payments do not leave a permanent record: only intermediaries of each payment are informed. It can be argued that Elmo further improves privacy, as payments are hidden from the intermediaries of a virtual channel.

Payment routing [55], [53], [37] is another research area that aims to improve network efficiency without sacrificing privacy. Actively rebalancing channels [33] can further increase network efficiency by reducing unavailable routes due to lack of well-balanced funds.

An alternative payment channel construction for Bitcoin that aspires to be the successor of Lightning is eltoo [17]. It is conceptually simpler, has smaller on-chain footprint and a more forgiving attitude towards submitting an old channel state than Lightning (as the old state is superseded without punishment), but it needs `ANYPREVOUT`. Compared to Elmo, eltoo is more lightweight in terms of storage and communication when setting up, but suffers from increased latency and communication for payments, as intermediaries have to actively participate in multi-hop payments. It also suffers in terms of privacy, as intermediaries learn the exact time and value of each payment. On a related note, the payment logic of Elmo could also be designed based on the eltoo mechanism instead of the currently leveraged LN techniques.

Bolt [28] constructs privacy-preserving payment channels enabling both direct payments and payments with a single untrusted intermediary. Sprites [47] leverages the scripting language of Ethereum to decrease the time collateral is locked compared to LN.

State channels are a generalisation of payment channels, which enable off-chain execution of any smart contract supported by the underlying blockchain, not just payments. Generalized Bitcoin-Compatible Channels [2] enable the creation of state channels on Bitcoin, extending channel functionality from simple payments to arbitrary Bitcoin scripts. Since Elmo only pertains to payment, not state, channels, we choose not to build it on top of [2]. State channels can also be extended to more than two parties [38], [22].

Perun [23] and GSCN [25] exploit the Turing-complete scripting language of Ethereum to provide virtual state channels, i.e., state channels that can open without an on-chain transaction. We believe that, given the versatile scripting of Ethereum, GSCN could be extended to support variadic channels in a straightforward manner. Similar features are provided by Celer [20]. Hydra [13] provides state channels for the Cardano [14] blockchain.

BDW [11] shows how pairwise channels over Bitcoin can be funded with no on-chain transactions by allowing parties to form groups that can pool their funds together off-chain and then use those funds to open channels. Such proposals are complementary to virtual channels and, depending on the usecase, could be more efficient. In comparison to Elmo, BDW is less flexible: coins in a BDW pool can only be exchanged with members of that pool. ACUM [26] allows for multi-path atomic payments with reduced collateral, enabling new applications such as crowdfunding conditional on reaching a funding target.

TEE-based [58] solutions [39], [40], [38], [37] improve the throughput and efficiency of PCNs by an order of magnitude

or more, at the cost of having to trust TEEs. Brick [5] uses a partially trusted committee to extend PCNs to fully asynchronous networks.

Solutions alternative to PCNs include sidechains (e.g., [6], [27], [35]), commit-chains (e.g., [50]), non-custodial chains (e.g., [50], [36], [24]), and partially centralised payment networks that entirely avoid using a blockchain [1], [45], [42], [54].

Last but not least, a number of works propose virtual channel constructions for Bitcoin. Lightweight Virtual Payment Channels [31] enables a virtual channel to be opened on top of two preexisting channels and uses a technique similar to DMC, unfortunately inheriting the fixed lifetime limitation. Let *simple channels* be those built directly on-chain, i.e., channels that are not virtual. Bitcoin-Compatible Virtual Channels [3] also enables virtual channels on top of two preexisting simple channels and offers two protocols, the first of which guarantees that the channel will stay off-chain for an agreed period, while the second allows the single intermediary to turn the virtual into a simple channel. This strategy has the shortcoming that even if it is made recursive (a direction left open in [3]) after  $k$  applications of the constructor the virtual channel participant will have to publish on-chain  $k$  transactions in order to close the channel if all intermediaries actively monitor the blockchain.

Donner [4] is the first work to achieve variadic virtual channels without recursion nor features that are not yet available in Bitcoin. This is achieved by having the funder lock as collateral twice the amount of the desired channel funds: once on-chain with funds that are external to the *base channels* (i.e., the channels that the virtual channel is based on) and once off-chain within its base channel. Thus the required collateral for the funder is double that of other protocols and a party lacking sufficient on-chain coins cannot fund a Donner channel; additionally, we conjecture that using external coins precludes variadic virtual channel designs that are not encumbered with limited lifetime. This design choice further means that Donner is not symmetric. Donner also uses placeholder outputs which, due to the minimum coins they need to carry to exceed Bitcoin's *dust limit*, may skew the incentives of rational players and adds to the opportunity cost of maintaining a channel. What is more, its design complicates future iterations that lift its current restriction that only one of the two channel parties can fund the virtual channel. The aforementioned incentives together with its lack of recursiveness mean that if a party with coins in a Donner channel decides to use them with another party, it first has to close its channel on-chain, with all the delays and fees this entails. Donner is more efficient than Elmo in terms of storage, computation and communication complexity, and boasts a simpler design, but has less room for optimisations and is not recursive. This work also introduces the *Domino attack*, which we address in detail in Section VII.

Furthermore, currently Donner is insecure because any state update to a base channel invalidates the corresponding  $tx^r$ . There is a straightforward fix, which however introduces an overhead to each payment over any base channel: On every payment, the two base channel parties must update their  $tx^r$  to spend the  $\alpha$  output of the new state. Potential intermediaries must consider this overhead and possibly increase the fees they



require from the endpoints. This per-payment overhead can be avoided by using ANYPREVOUT in the  $\alpha$  output.

Table I contains a comparison of the features and limitations of virtual channel protocols, including the one put forth in this work.

## II. PROTOCOL DESCRIPTION

Conceptually, Elmo is split into four main actions: channel opening, payments, cooperative closing and unilateral closing. A channel  $(P_1, P_n)$  between parties  $P_1$  and  $P_n$  may be opened directly on-chain, in which case the two parties follow an opening procedure similar to that of LN; such a channel is called *simple*. Otherwise it can be opened on top of a path of preexisting *base* channels  $(P_1, P_2), (P_2, P_3), \dots, (P_{n-1}, P_n)$ , in which case  $(P_1, P_n)$  is a *virtual* channel (since Elmo is recursive, each base channel may itself be simple or virtual). To open a virtual channel, all parties  $P_i$  on the path follow our novel protocol, setting aside funds in their channels as collateral for the new virtual channel; this is done by creating so-called *virtual* transactions that essentially tie the spending of two adjacent base channels into a single atomic action. Once intermediaries are done, a special *funding* output has been created off-chain which carries the sum of  $P_1$  and  $P_n$ 's channel balance.  $P_1$  and  $P_n$  finally create the channel, applying a logic similar to LN on top of the funding output: their channel is now open. LN demands that the funding output is on-chain, but we lift this requirement. We instead guarantee that either endpoint can put the funding output put on-chain unilaterally.

A payment over an established channel follows a procedure heavily inspired by LN as well. To be completed, a payment needs three messages to be exchanged by the two parties.

A virtual channel can be optimistically closed completely off-chain. At a high level, the parties that control the base channels *revoke* their *virtual* transactions and the related *commitment* transactions. Revoked transactions cannot be used anymore. This effectively “peels” one layer of virtualisation. Balances are redistributed so that intermediaries “break even”, while  $P_1$  and  $P_n$  each gets its rightful coins (as reflected in the last state of the virtual channel) in its base channel  $((P_1, P_2)$  and  $(P_{n-1}, P_n)$  respectively).

Finally, the unilateral closing procedure of a virtual channel  $(P_1, P_n)$  does not need cooperation and consists of signing and publishing a number of transactions on-chain. In the simplest case, one of the two endpoints, say  $P_1$ , publishes her virtual transaction. This prompts  $P_2$  to publish her virtual transaction as well and so on up to  $P_{n-1}$ , at which point the funding output of  $(P_1, P_n)$  is automatically on-chain and closing can proceed as in LN. If instead any intermediary stays inactive, then a timelock expires and a suitable output becomes the funding output for  $(P_1, P_n)$ , at the expense of the inactive party.

In a nutshell, a virtual channel is built on top of two or more *base channels*, which, due to the recursive property, may themselves be simple or virtual. The parties that control the base channels are called *base parties*. The fact that more than two base channels can be used by a virtual channel is ensured by the variadic property.

As we mentioned earlier, a channel with its funding transaction on-chain is called *simple*. A channel is either simple or

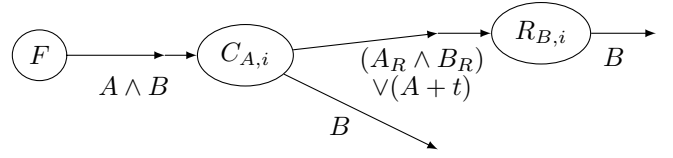


Figure 1: Funding, commitment and revocation transactions

virtual, not both. At a high level, during the channel opening procedure (c.f. Figure 39) the two counterparties (i) create new keypairs and exchange the resulting public keys (2 messages), then (ii) if the channel is virtual, prepare the underlying base channels  $(12 \cdot (n-1))$  total messages, i.e., 6 outgoing messages per endpoint and 12 outgoing messages per intermediary, for  $n-2$  intermediaries, next (iii) they exchange signatures for their respective initial commitment transactions (2 messages) and lastly, (iv) if the channel is simple, the *funder* signs and publishes the *funding* transaction to the ledger. We note that like LN, only one of the two parties, the *funder*, provides coins for a new channel. This limitation simplifies the execution model and analysis, but can be lifted at the cost of additional protocol complexity.

In order to build better intuition for Elmo, let us present examples of the lifecycles of a simple and a virtual channel. Consider 5 parties,  $A, B, \dots, E$  and 4 channels,  $(A, B), \dots, (D, E)$ , that will act as the base of the virtual channel  $(A, E)$ . We first follow the operations of the simple channel  $(A, B)$  and then those of  $(A, E)$ . We simplify some parts of the protocol to aid comprehension.

**a) Simple channel:** First  $A$  and  $B$  generate keypairs and exchange the public keys. Each then locally generates the *funding* and the two *commitment* txs (Fig. 1). The latter are signed and the signatures are exchanged.  $A$  then publishes the funding tx on-chain. Once it is finalised, the channel is open.

The funding tx moves  $A$ 's initial coins to a 2-of-2 multisig, i.e., an output that needs signatures from both  $A$  and  $B$  to be spent. There is one commitment tx per party, stored locally off-chain. The one held by  $A$  ( $C_{A,i}$  in Fig. 1) spends the funding tx and has one output for  $A$  (initially with all coins) and one for  $B$  (initially with 0 coins).  $A$ 's output can be spent by either a multisig, or by  $A$  after a relative timelock of  $t$ . This is, as we will promptly see, so that  $B$  has some time to *punish*  $A$  if she cheats.  $B$ 's commitment tx is symmetric.

When  $A$  pays  $B$ , the parties create new commitment txs reflecting the new balance, sign them and exchange the signatures. In order to ensure only one set of commitment txs is valid at a time, they then revoke their previous commitment txs. This is done by generating and signing the revocation txs of the previous commitment txs.  $B$ 's revocation tx ( $R_{B,i}$  in Fig. 1) gives to  $B$  the coins that belonged to  $A$  in the previous commitment tx and vice versa. This way both parties are disincentivised from publishing an old commitment tx under the threat of losing all their channel coins.

Closing  $(A, B)$  is now as simple as unilaterally publishing the latest commitment tx on-chain and waiting for the timelock to expire. Since the last commitment tx is not revoked, punishment is impossible. Observe that the mechanics of simple channels are essentially a simplification of LN.

Table I: Features &amp; requirements comparison of virtual channel protocols

	Unlimited lifetime	Recursive	Variadic	Symmetric	Script requirements
LVPC [31]	✗	● <sup>a</sup>	✗	✓	Bitcoin
BCVC [3]	✓	✗	✗	✓	Bitcoin
Perun [23]	✓	✗	✗	✓	Ethereum
GSCN [25]	✓	✓	✗	✓	Ethereum
Donner [4]	✗	✗	✓	✗	Bitcoin
this work	✓	✓	✓	✓	Bitcoin + ANYPREVOUT

<sup>a</sup>lacks security analysis

**b) Virtual channel:** Assume now that channels  $(A, B), \dots, (D, E)$ , are open and the “left” party of each owns at least  $c$  coins in it. These channels can be either simple or virtual. In order for the virtual channel  $(A, E)$  to open using them as base channels, initially with  $A$  having  $c$  coins, the following steps are taken. First, the 5 parties generate and exchange keys. Then the base parties are set up: each base channel is updated to contain  $c$  less coins, taken from the “left” party. The updated commitment txs also use new keys for their input multisig, since, as we will see, so-called *virtual* txs will interject the funding and the commitment txs from now on, all together forming the *virtual layer*.

Next, these virtual txs are generated and signed. These txs sit at the core of Elmo. Their logic is as follows: each intermediary is forced to spend both its adjacent funding outputs at once if it wants to close either of its channels – the currently valid way of spending the funding output, the commitment tx, will soon be revoked. Spending the two funding outputs is done by the intermediary’s *initiator* virtual tx, which produces one new funding output for each of the channels (Fig. 2, top & bottom outputs), one output that refunds the collateral to the intermediary (2nd from top) and, crucially, a so-called *virtual* output (3rd from top). The latter output can be spent by either of the two adjacent parties if they are intermediaries, using an *extend-interval* virtual tx. Such a tx also spends the other, as-of-yet unspent, funding output of the intermediary that publishes it (Fig. 3, bottom input). It has 3 outputs: one refunding the collateral to the publisher (top), another virtual output (middle) and a funding output that replaces the one just spent (bottom). This virtual output can in turn be spent by another extend-interval tx, which produces yet another virtual output and so on until all base funding outputs are spent and all intermediaries are refunded. The last virtual output is finally the funding output of the virtual channel.

The virtual txs are designed around two axes: First, each intermediary can only publish a single virtual tx, by which it is refunded its collateral exactly once. Second, if the chain of virtual txs is at any point broken by, e.g., an inactive intermediary that does not publish its virtual tx, the virtual channel will still be funded correctly. This is achieved by turning the unclaimed virtual output into the funding output of the virtual channel after a timelock (see, e.g., 2nd spending method of the 3rd output of Fig. 2 and note that  $P+t$  denotes that spending method  $P$  is only available after a *relative* timelock  $t$ , with relative meaning that the countdown starts at the moment of publication). In this case, the inactive party loses its collateral.

A number of considerations remain before the security of the scheme is ensured. Firstly,  $A$  and  $E$  need to be able to unilaterally initiate the “collapse” of the virtual layer. This is

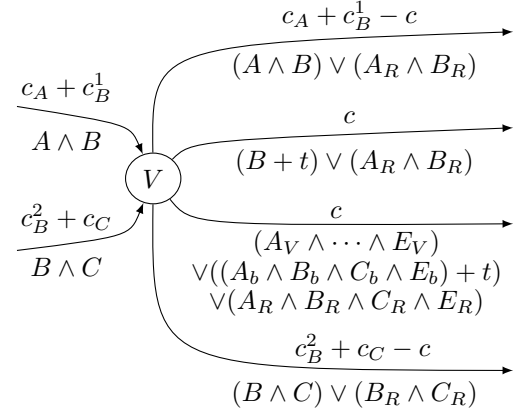


Figure 2:  $A - E$  virtual channel:  $B$ ’s initiator transaction. Spends the funding outputs of the  $A - B$  and  $B - C$  channels. Can be used if neither  $A$  nor  $C$  have published a virtual transaction yet.

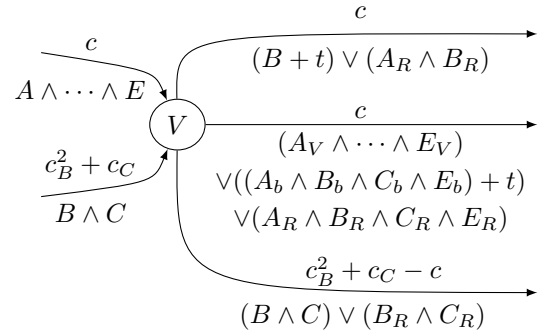


Figure 3:  $A - E$  virtual channel: One of  $B$ ’s extend interval transactions. Spends the virtual output of  $A$ ’s initiator transaction and the funding output of the  $B - C$  channel. Can be used if  $A$  has already published its initiator transaction and  $C$  has not published a virtual transaction yet.

achieved by equipping them with special, single-input initiator txs (Fig. 4) – these are the only virtual txs needed by the 2 endpoints. Secondly, intermediaries must be able to regain their collateral even if both their funding outputs have been consumed. This is ensured via *merge-intervals* virtual txs (e.g., Fig. 5) which spend both lateral virtual outputs, refund the publisher and produce a new virtual output. Thirdly, it must be ensured that no intermediary can publish more than one virtual tx to protect the endpoints from an unbounded sequence

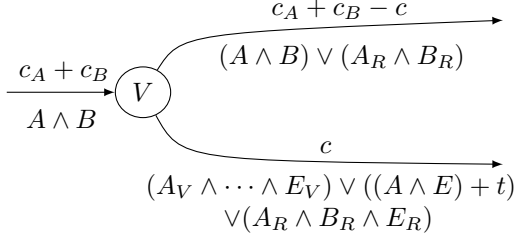


Figure 4:  $A - E$  virtual channel:  $A$ 's initiator transaction. Spends the funding output of the  $A - B$  channel. Can be used if  $B$  has not published a virtual transaction yet.

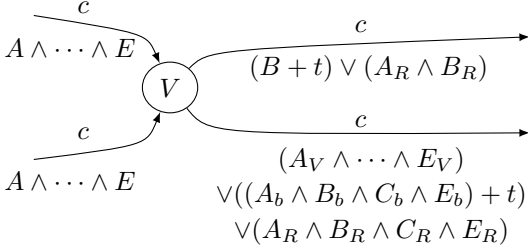


Figure 5:  $A - E$  virtual channel: One of  $B$ 's merge interval transactions. Spends the virtual outputs of  $A$ 's and  $C$ 's virtual transactions. Usable if both  $A$  and  $C$  have already published their initiator or extend-interval transactions.

of virtual txs preventing them from accessing their funding output indefinitely – note that malicious parties can fabricate arbitrarily many virtual outputs using their own, external to the protocol, coins, therefore if all virtual outputs were identical, a perpetual stream of merge-intervals txs, spending one valid and one fabricated virtual output, could be published. This is safeguarded by specifying on each virtual output the exact sequence of parties that have already published a virtual tx and only allowing the parties at the two edges to extend it with their virtual tx. Virtual outputs that correspond to cases in which all intermediaries have acted are not spendable by another virtual transaction, ensuring that the endpoints will eventually obtain a funding output. Preventing this attack means that intermediaries need to store  $O(n^3)$  virtual transactions for a virtual channel over  $n$  parties. Lastly, the exact values of timelocks have to be carefully selected to ensure that enough time is given to each party to act. The timelocks increase linearly with the depth of the recursion. The exact values are shown in Sec. IV and Appx. F.

After the virtual txs are set up, the parties revoke their previous commitment txs. This is achieved by signing the corresponding revocation txs, just like for a simple channel.

At last, the virtual layer has been set up: Both  $A$  and  $E$  can unilaterally force the funding output of their virtual channel on-chain, irrespective of the actions of the rest of the parties. Likewise, honest intermediaries' funds are secure and unilaterally retrievable.  $A$  and  $E$  finally exchange commitment transactions for their new channel, thus concluding its opening.

Payments over virtual channels are carried out exactly like

those of simple ones; we refer the reader to the relevant description above.

To enhance usability, our protocol allows the virtual channel to be closed off-chain, given that all parties cooperate. To do this, the endpoints first let the intermediaries know their final virtual channel balance. Then the parties of each base channel create new commitment txs for their channels, moving the collateral back into the channel: the “left” party gets  $A$ 's coins and the “right” one gets  $E$ 's. Thus all intermediaries “break even” across their two channels. Once this is done, all virtual txs are revoked, using a logic similar to the revocation procedure of simple channels but scaled up to all parties. This is why all virtual tx outputs (Figs. 4-5) have a spending method with  $A_R \dots E_R$  keys.

What if one of the parties does not cooperate? Then unilateral, on-chain closing must be used. Fig. 6 shows how this would play out if  $A$  initiated this procedure.

Our protocol is recursive because both simple and virtual channels are ultimately represented by a funding output that either is or can be put on-chain, therefore new virtual channels can be built on either.

### III. MODEL

#### A. $\mathcal{G}_{\text{Ledger}}$ Functionality

In this work we embrace the Universal Composition (UC) framework [12] together with its global subroutines extension, UCGS [7], to model parties, network interactions, adversarial influence and corruptions, as well as formalise and prove security. We model the Bitcoin ledger with the  $\mathcal{G}_{\text{Ledger}}$  functionality as defined in [9], [8].  $\mathcal{G}_{\text{Ledger}}$  formalizes an ideal data structure that is distributed and append-only, akin to a blockchain. Participants can read from  $\mathcal{G}_{\text{Ledger}}$ , which returns an ordered list of transactions. Additionally a party can submit a new transaction which, if valid, will eventually be added to the ledger when the adversary decides, but necessarily within a predefined time window. This property is named liveness. Once a transaction becomes part of the ledger, it then becomes visible to all parties at the discretion of the adversary, but necessarily within another predefined time window, and it cannot be reordered or removed. This is named persistence.

Moreover,  $\mathcal{G}_{\text{Ledger}}$  needs the  $\mathcal{G}_{\text{Clock}}$  functionality [32], which models the notion of time. Any  $\mathcal{G}_{\text{Clock}}$  participant can request to read the current time and inform  $\mathcal{G}_{\text{Clock}}$  that her round is over.  $\mathcal{G}_{\text{Clock}}$  increments the time by one once all parties have declared the end of their round. Both  $\mathcal{G}_{\text{Ledger}}$  and  $\mathcal{G}_{\text{Clock}}$  are global functionalities [7] and therefore can be accessed directly by the environment. The definitions of  $\mathcal{G}_{\text{Ledger}}$  and  $\mathcal{G}_{\text{Clock}}$  can be found in Appx. G.

#### B. Modelling time

The protocol and functionality defined in this work do not use  $\mathcal{G}_{\text{Clock}}$  directly. Indeed, the only notion of time is provided by the blockchain height, as reported by  $\mathcal{G}_{\text{Ledger}}$ . We thus omit it in the statement of our lemmas and theorems for simplicity of notation; it should normally appear as a hybrid together with  $\mathcal{G}_{\text{Ledger}}$ .

Our protocol is fully asynchronous, i.e., the adversary can delay any network message arbitrarily long. The protocol is

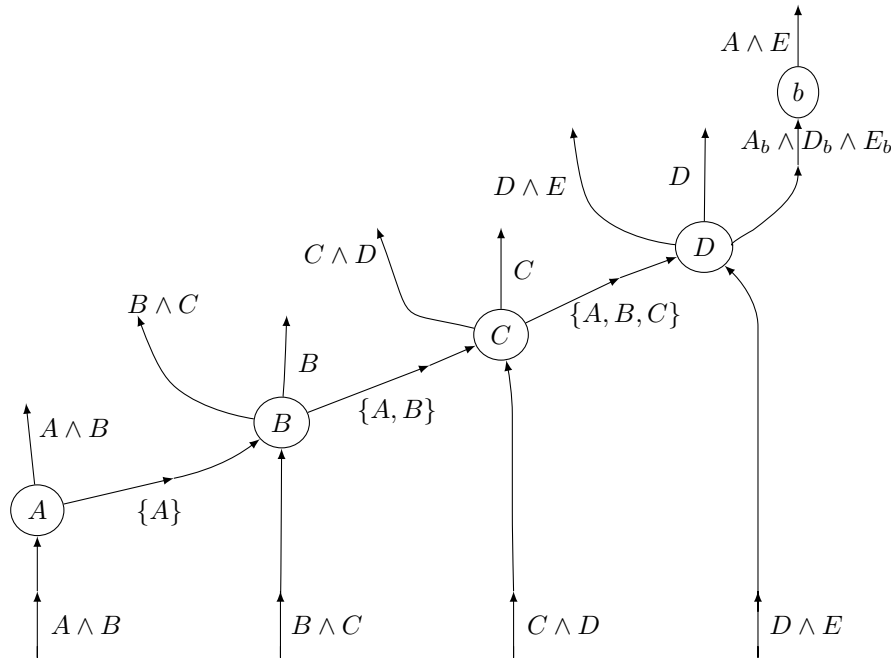


Figure 6: 4 simple channels supporting a virtual.  $A$  starts closing by publishing its initiator tx, then parties  $B$ – $D$  each publishes its suitable extend-interval. No party stays inactive. Virtual outputs are marked with the set (interval) of parties that have already published a tx. Bridge txs (such as  $b$ ) are needed to convert the various virtual outputs into the same funding output, as ANYPREVOUT only works across identical outputs.

robust against such delays, as an honest party can unilaterally prevent loss of funds even if some of its messages are dropped by  $A$ , given that the party can communicate with  $\mathcal{G}_{\text{Ledger}}$ . In other words, no extra synchrony assumptions to those required by  $\mathcal{G}_{\text{Ledger}}$  are needed. We also note that, following the conventions of single-threaded UC execution model, the duration of local computation is not taken into account (as long as it does not exceed its polynomial bound).

#### IV. PROTOCOL PSEUDOCODE

We here present a simplified version of the protocol. We omit complications imposed by UC. Appx. F contains the full protocol and Appx. E its in-depth description in prose.

##### Process $\Pi_{\text{Chan}} - \text{self is } P$

- At the beginning of each activation:
  - if** we have not been activated for more than  $p$  blocks **then**  
We are negligent // no balance security guarantees
- Open channel with counterparty  $P'$ :
  - Generate funding and revocation keypairs.
  - Exchange funding, revocation & own public keys with  $P'$ .
  - if** opening virtual (off-chain) channel **then**  
Run next bullet “Host a virtual channel” as endpoint.
  - Exchange & verify signatures on commitment txs with  $P'$ .
  - if** opening simple (on-chain) channel **then**  
Prepare and submit funding transaction to ledger and wait for its inclusion. // only one party funds the channel, so the funding transaction needs only the funder’s signature  
 $t_P \leftarrow s + p$  // simple channel timelock

//  $s$ : max blocks before submitted tx enters ledger

- Host a virtual channel of  $c$  coins (endpoint or intermediary):
  - Ensure we have at least  $c$  coins.
  - Generate one new funding keypair,  $O(n^2)$  virtual keypairs ( $O(n)$  per hop) and one virtual revocation keypair.
  - Exchange these public keys with all base channel parties.
  - Generate and sign new commitment txs with our counterparty/ies (1 if endpoint, 2 if intermediary), using the new funding and latest revocation keys and reducing by  $c$  the balance of the party “closer” to the funder.
  - Exchange signatures with counterparty/ies and verify them.
  - Generate and sign all  $O(n^3)$  virtual and bridge txs.
  - Exchange all signatures among all base channel parties and verify that all our virtual txs have fully signed inputs.
  - Exchange with counterparty/ies and verify signatures for the funding inputs of our initiator and extend-interval txs.
  - Exchange with counterparty/ies and verify signatures for the revocation txs of the previous channel state.
  - if** we are intermediary **then**  
 $t_P \leftarrow \max\{t \text{ of left channel}, t \text{ of right channel}\}$
  - else** // we are endpoint  
 $t_P \leftarrow p + \sum_{j=2}^{n-1} (s - 1 + t_j)$  // max delay is  $O(\text{sum of intermediaries' delays})$ . Occurs when we use initiator tx and each intermediary uses extend-interval tx sequentially.
- React if counterparty publishes virtual tx:
  - Publish our only valid virtual tx. // if both counterparties have published, this is a merge-intervals tx, otherwise it is an extend-interval tx.
- Pay  $x$  coins to  $P'$  over our (simple or virtual) channel:



Ensure we have at least  $x$  coins.  
**if** we host a virtual channel **then**  
 Ensure new balance prevents grieving. // c.f. E-C0a  
 Generate and sign new commitment txs, with  $x$  coins less for the payer and  $x$  coins more for the payee.  
 Exchange and verify signatures.  
 Sign revocation txs corresponding to old commitment txs.  
 Generate next revocation keypairs.  
 Exchange and verify revocation signatures and public keys.

- Close virtual channel unilaterally:  
 Publish initiator & bridge tx. // Funding output is on-chain  
 Publish our latest commitment tx on-chain.
- Close virtual channel cooperatively: // Only if not hosting  
 Endpoints sign & send their balance  $(c_1, c_2)$  to all parties.  
 Parties verify sigs, ensure endpoints agree and  $c_1 + c_2 = c$ .  
 All parties generate and sign new commitment txs with:
  - the funding keys used before opening virtual channel,
  - the new revocation keys, and
  - $c_1$  more coins to party closer to funder,  $c_2$  to the other.
 All parties generate new revocation keypairs.  
 All pairs exchange & verify sigs & revocation public keys.  
 All parties generate and sign revocation txs for the old virtual, bridge and commitment txs.  
 All pairs exchange and verify signatures.
- Punish malicious counterparties: // Run every  $p$  blocks  
**if** an old commitment tx is on-chain **then**  
 Sign and publish the corresponding revocation tx.  
**if** the ledger contains an old virtual or bridge tx **then**  
 Sign and publish the corresponding revocation tx(s)

Figure 7: High level pseudocode of the Elmo protocol

## V. SECURITY

Before providing the UC-based security guarantees, it is useful to obtain concrete properties directly from our protocol. We first delineate the security guarantees Elmo provides by proving two similar claims regarding the conservation of funds in the real and ideal world, Lemmas 1 and 2 respectively. The formal statements (7 and 8) along with all proofs are deferred to Appx. I. Informally, the first establishes that if an honest, non-negligent party was implicated in a channel that has now been unilaterally closed, then the party will have at least the expected funds on-chain.

*Lemma 1 (Real world balance security (informal)):*  
 Consider a real world execution with  $P \in \{Alice, Bob\}$  honest, non-negligent LN ITI. Assume that all of the following are true:

- $P$  opened the channel, with initial balance  $c$ ,
- $P$  is the host of  $n$  channels, each funded with  $f_i$  coins,
- $P$  has cooperatively closed  $k$  channels, where the  $i$ -th channel transferred  $r_i$  coins from the hosted virtual channel to  $P$ ,
- $P$  has sent  $m$  payments, each involving  $d_i$  coins,
- $P$  has received  $l$  payments, each involving  $e_i$  coins.

If  $P$  closes unilaterally, eventually there will be  $h$  outputs on-chain spendable only by  $P$  or a kindred party, each of value  $c_i$ , such that

$$\sum_{i=1}^h c_i \geq c - \sum_{i=1}^n f_i - \sum_{i=1}^m d_i + \sum_{i=1}^l e_i + \sum_{i=1}^k r_i . \quad (1)$$

Lemma 2 states that for an ideal party in a similar situation, the relevant balance stored in  $\mathcal{G}_{\text{Chan}}$  equals the expected funds.

*Lemma 2 (Ideal world balance (informal)):* Consider an ideal world execution with functionality  $\mathcal{G}_{\text{Chan}}$ . Let  $P \in \{Alice, Bob\}$  one of the two parties of  $\mathcal{G}_{\text{Chan}}$ . Assume that all of the following hold:

- $P$  is not corrupted or negligent, nor any member of the transitive closure of its hosts has published a revocation transaction,
- $P$  opened the channel, with initial balance  $c$ ,
- $P$  is the host of  $n$  channels, each funded with  $f_i$  coins,
- $P$  has cooperatively closed  $k$  channels, where the  $i$ -th channel transferred  $r_i$  coins from the hosted virtual channel to  $P$ ,
- $P$  has sent  $m$  payments, each involving  $d_i$  coins,
- $P$  has received  $l$  payments, involving  $e_i$  coins.

Let  $\text{balance}_P$  be the balance that  $\mathcal{G}_{\text{Chan}}$  stores for  $P$ . If the channel is closed (either unilaterally or cooperatively), then the following holds with overwhelming probability on the security parameter:

$$\text{balance}_P = c - \sum_{i=1}^n f_i - \sum_{i=1}^m d_i + \sum_{i=1}^l e_i + \sum_{i=1}^k r_i . \quad (2)$$

In both cases the expected funds are [initial balance - funds for hosted virtuals + funds returned from hosted virtuals - outbound payments + inbound payments]. Note that the funds for hosted virtuals only refer to those funds used by the funder of the virtual channel, not the rest of the base parties.

Both proofs follow all possible execution paths, keeping track of the resulting balance in each case.

It is important to note that in fact  $\Pi_{\text{Chan}}$  provides a stronger guarantee: a party can always unilaterally close its channel and obtain the expected funds on-chain within a known number of blocks. This stronger guarantee is sufficient to make Elmo reliable enough for real-world applications. However an ideal world functionality with such guarantees would have to be aware of specific txs and signatures, making it as complicated as the protocol, thus violating the spirit of the simulation-based security paradigm.

Subsequently we prove Lemma 3, which informally states that if an ideal party and all its kindred parties are honest, then  $\mathcal{G}_{\text{Chan}}$  does not halt with overwhelming probability.

*Lemma 3 (No halt):* In an ideal execution with  $\mathcal{G}_{\text{Chan}}$  and  $\mathcal{S}$ , if the kindred parties of the honest parties of  $\mathcal{G}_{\text{Chan}}$  are themselves honest, then the functionality halts with negligible probability in the security parameter (i.e., 1. 21 of Fig. 20 is executed negligibly often).



A salient observation regarding  $\Pi_{\text{Chan}}$  is that, in order to open a virtual channel, it passes inputs to another  $\Pi_{\text{Chan}}$  instance that belongs to a different extended session. This means that  $\Pi_{\text{Chan}}$  is not *subroutine respecting*, as defined in [12]. To address this issue, we first add a superscript to  $\Pi_{\text{Chan}}$ , i.e.,  $\Pi_{\text{Chan}}^n$ .  $\Pi_{\text{Chan}}^1$  is always a simple channel. This is done by ignoring instructions to OPEN on top of other channels. As for higher superscripts,  $\forall n \in \mathbb{N}^*$ ,  $\Pi_{\text{Chan}}^{n+1}$  is the same as  $\Pi_{\text{Chan}}^n$  but with base channels of a maximum superscript  $n$ . It then holds that  $\forall n \in \mathbb{N}^*$ ,  $\Pi_{\text{Chan}}^n$  is  $(\mathcal{G}_{\text{Ledger}}, \Pi_{\text{Chan}}^1, \dots, \Pi_{\text{Chan}}^{n-1})$ -subroutine respecting, as defined in [7]. The same superscript trick is done to  $\mathcal{G}_{\text{Chan}}$ . To the best of the authors' knowledge, this recursion-based proof technique for UC security is novel. It is of independent interest and can be reused to prove UC security in protocols that may use copies of themselves as subroutines.

Theorem 4 states that  $\Pi_{\text{Chan}}^1$  UC-realises  $\mathcal{G}_{\text{Chan}}^1$ .

**Theorem 4 (Simple Payment Channel Security):** The protocol  $\Pi_{\text{Chan}}^1$  UC-realises  $\mathcal{G}_{\text{Chan}}^1$  in the presence of a global functionality  $\mathcal{G}_{\text{Ledger}}$  and assuming the security of the underlying digital signature:

$$\forall \text{PPT } \mathcal{A}, \exists \text{PPT } \mathcal{S} : \forall \text{PPT } \mathcal{E} \text{ it is} \\ \text{EXEC}_{\Pi_{\text{Chan}}^1, \mathcal{A}, \mathcal{E}}^{\mathcal{G}_{\text{Ledger}}} \approx \text{EXEC}_{\mathcal{S}, \mathcal{E}}^{\mathcal{G}_{\text{Chan}}^1, \mathcal{G}_{\text{Ledger}}}.$$

The corresponding proof stems from Lemma 3, the fact that  $\mathcal{G}_{\text{Chan}}$  is a simple relay and that  $\mathcal{S}$  faithfully simulates  $\Pi_{\text{Chan}}$ . Lastly we prove that  $\forall$  integers  $n \geq 2$ ,  $\Pi_{\text{Chan}}^n$  UC-realises  $\mathcal{G}_{\text{Chan}}^n$ .

**Theorem 5 (Recursive Virtual Payment Channel Security):**  $\forall n \in \mathbb{N}^* \setminus \{1\}$ , the protocol  $\Pi_{\text{Chan}}^n$  UC-realises  $\mathcal{G}_{\text{Chan}}^n$  in the presence of  $\mathcal{G}_{\text{Chan}}^1, \dots, \mathcal{G}_{\text{Chan}}^{n-1}$  and  $\mathcal{G}_{\text{Ledger}}$ , assuming the security of the underlying digital signature. Specifically,

$$\forall n \in \mathbb{N}^* \setminus \{1\}, \forall \text{PPT } \mathcal{A}, \exists \text{PPT } \mathcal{S} : \forall \text{PPT } \mathcal{E} \text{ it is} \\ \text{EXEC}_{\Pi_{\text{Chan}}^n, \mathcal{A}, \mathcal{E}}^{\mathcal{G}_{\text{Ledger}}, \mathcal{G}_{\text{Chan}}^1, \dots, \mathcal{G}_{\text{Chan}}^{n-1}} \approx \text{EXEC}_{\mathcal{S}, \mathcal{E}}^{\mathcal{G}_{\text{Chan}}^n, \mathcal{G}_{\text{Ledger}}}.$$

## VI. EFFICIENCY EVALUATION & SIMULATIONS

We offer here a cost and efficiency comparison of this work with LVPC [31] and Donner [4]. We focus on these due to their exclusive support of virtual channels over any number of base channels. We remind that LVPC achieves this via recursion, while Donner because it is variadic (c.f. Table I).

We first count the communication, storage and on-chain cost of a virtual channel under each protocol. We then simulate the execution of a large number of payments among many parties and derive payment latency and fees. We thus obtain an end-to-end understanding of both the requirements and the benefits each protocol provides.

**a) Cost calculation:** Consider the setting of 1 funder ( $P_1$ ), 1 fundee ( $P_n$ ) and  $n - 2$  intermediaries ( $P_2, \dots, P_{n-1}$ ) where  $P_i$  has a base channel with each of  $P_{i-1}, P_{i+1}$ . We compare the off-chain cost of opening (Table II) and the on-chain cost of unilaterally closing (Table III).

Regarding opening, in Table II we measure for each of the 3 protocols the number of communication rounds required, the

total size of outgoing messages as well as the amount of space for storing channel data. We measure from the perspective of the funder, the fundee and an intermediary, along with the aggregate for all parties. The communication rounds for a party are calculated as its  $[\text{\#incoming messages} + \text{\#outgoing messages}]/2$ . The size of outgoing messages and the stored data are measured in raw bytes. The data is counted as the sum of the relevant channel identifiers (8 bytes each, as defined by the Lightning Network specification<sup>2</sup>), transaction output identifiers (36 bytes), secret keys (32 bytes each), public keys (32 bytes each, compressed form – these double as party identifiers), Schnorr signatures (64 bytes each), coins (8 bytes each), times and timelocks (both 4 bytes each). UC-specific data is ignored.

For LVPC, multiple different topologies can support a virtual channel between  $P_1$  and  $P_n$  (all of which need  $n - 1$  base channels). We here consider the case in which the funder  $P_1$  first opens one virtual channel with  $P_3$  on top of channels  $(P_1, P_2)$  and  $(P_2, P_3)$ , then another virtual channel with  $P_4$  over  $(P_1, P_3)$  and  $(P_3, P_4)$  and so on up to the  $(P_1, P_n)$  channel, opened over  $(P_1, P_{n-1})$  and  $(P_{n-1}, P_n)$ . We choose this topology as  $P_1$  cannot assume that there exist any virtual channels between other parties (which could be used as shortcuts).

A subtle byproduct of the above topology is that during the opening phase of LVPC every intermediary  $P_i$  acts both as a fundee in its virtual channel with the funder  $P_1$  and as an intermediary in the virtual channel of  $P_1$  with the next party  $P_{i+1}$ . The above does not apply to the first intermediary  $P_2$ , since it already has a channel with  $P_1$  before the protocol starts. Table II shows the total cost of intermediaries  $P_3, \dots, P_{n-1}$ . The first intermediary  $P_2$  incurs instead [intermediary's costs - fundee's costs] for all three measured quantities.

For Elmo, the data are derived assuming a virtual channel opens directly on top of  $n - 1$  base channels. In other words the channel considered is opened without the help of recursion and only leverages the variadic property of Elmo. In Table II the resources calculated for Elmo are exact for  $n \geq 4$  parties, whereas for  $n = 3$  they slightly overestimate.

For the closing comparison, we measure on-chain transactions' size in vbytes<sup>3</sup>, which map directly to on-chain fees and thus are preferable to raw bytes. Using vbytes also ensures our comparison remains up-to-date irrespective of the network congestion and bitcoin-to-fiat currency exchange rate at the time of reading. We use the tool found in <https://jlopp.github.io/bitcoin-transaction-size-calculator/> to aid size calculation. For the case of intermediaries, in order to only show the costs incurred due to supporting a virtual channel, we subtract the cost the intermediary would pay to close its channel if it was not supporting any virtual channel.

The on-chain number of transactions to close a virtual channel in the case of LVPC is calculated as follows: One "split" transaction is needed for each base channel ( $n - 1$  in total), plus one "merge" transaction per virtual channel ( $n - 2$  in total), plus a single "refund" transaction for the virtual channel, for a total of  $2n - 2$  transactions.

<sup>2</sup>[https://github.com/lightning/bolts/blob/master/07-routing-gossip.md#definition-of-short\\_channel\\_id](https://github.com/lightning/bolts/blob/master/07-routing-gossip.md#definition-of-short_channel_id)

<sup>3</sup>[https://en.bitcoin.it/wiki/Weight\\_units](https://en.bitcoin.it/wiki/Weight_units)

	Open									
	Funder			Fundee			Intermediary			Total
	party rounds	size		party rounds	size		party rounds	size		size
		sent	stored		sent	stored		sent	stored	
LVPC	$8(n-2)$	$1381(n-2)$	$3005(n-2)$	7	1254	2936	16	2989	6385	$4370n - 8740$
Donner	2	$184n + 829$	$1332.5k + 43n + 125.5$	1	$43n + 192.5$	$1332.5k + 43n + 125.5$	1	547	$1332.5k + 43n + 125.5$	$774n - 71$
Elmo	6	$32n^3 - 128n^2 + 544n - 276$	$\frac{128}{3}n^3 - 128n^2 + \frac{1276}{3}n + 220$	6	$32n^3 - 128n^2 + 544n - 340$	$\frac{128}{3}n^3 - 128n^2 + \frac{1276}{3}n + 220$	12	$96n^3 - 256n^2 + 404n - 40$	$96n^3 - 256n^2 + 468n + 88$	$96n^4 - 384n^3 + 724n^2 + 240n - 792$

Table II: Open efficiency comparison of virtual channel protocols with  $n$  parties and  $k$  payments

Regarding closing, in Table III we measure for each of the three protocols the worst-case on-chain cost a party would need to incur in order to unilaterally close its channel. The cost is measured both in the number of transactions and in their total size.

For the two endpoints (funder and fundee), the cost of unilaterally closing the virtual channel is reported. On the other hand, for each intermediary we report the cost of closing a base channel. We also present the worst-case total on-chain cost, aggregated over all parties. Note that the latter cost is not simply the sum of the worst-case costs of all parties, as one party's worst case is not necessarily the worst case of another. This cost rather represents the maximum possible load an instantiation of each protocol could add to the blockchain when closing.

We note that Elmo exploits MuSig2 [44], [49] to reduce both its on-chain and storage footprint: the  $n$  signatures that are needed to spend each virtual and bridge output can be securely reduced to a single aggregate signature. The same cannot be said for Donner, since this technique cannot optimise away the  $n$  outputs of the funder's transaction  $\tau x^{vc}$ . Likewise LVPC cannot gain a linear improvement with this optimisation, since each of its relevant transactions ("split", "merge" and "refund") needs constant signatures.

We also note that due to the fact that human connections form a small world [46], we expect that in practice the need for virtual channels with a very big number of intermediaries will be exceedingly rare. This is corroborated by the fact that LN only supports payments of up to 20 hops without impact to its usefulness. Therefore, the asymptotic network and storage complexity are not as relevant as the concrete costs for specific, low values of  $n$ . Under this light, the overhead of Elmo is tolerable. For example, the network requirements for a funder when opening an Elmo channel of length 6 are less than 3 times those of Donner and slightly cheaper than LVPC (Table II).

**b) Payment simulations:** We implemented a simulation framework<sup>4</sup> in which a list of randomly generated payments are carried out. A single simulation is parametrised by a list of payments (sender, receiver, value triples), the protocol (Elmo, Donner, LVPC, LN or on-chain only), which future payments each payer knows and the utility function it maximises. The knowledge function defines which future payments inform each decision. Several knowledge functions are provided, such as full knowledge of all future payments and knowledge of the payer's next  $m$  payments.

The utility of a payment is high when its latency and fees are low, it increases the payer's network centrality, and reduces distance from other parties. We give more weight to low latency and fees, then to small distance and lastly to high centrality. Each payment is carried out by dry-running all known future payments with the three possible payment kinds (simply on-chain, opening a new channel, using existing channels), comparing their utility and executing the best one. Recognising the arbitrary nature of the concrete weights, we chose them before running our simulations in order to minimise bias.

The simulation outputs extensive data on the progress of each run. Our simulation framework is of independent interest, as it is built to be flexible and reusable for a variety of payment network protocol evaluations. We here show the performance of the 3 protocols with respect to the metrics payment channels aim to improve, namely payment latency and fees.

Due to the privacy guarantees of LN, we are unable to obtain real-world off-chain payment data. We therefore generate payments randomly. More specifically, we provide three different payment topologies to mimic different usage schemes: First, each party has a preferred receiver, chosen uniformly at the beginning, which it pays half the time, the other half choosing the payee uniformly at random. Each payment value is chosen uniformly at random from the  $[0, \max]$  range, for  $\max = \frac{(\text{initial coins}) \cdot \# \text{players}}{\# \text{payments}}$ . We employ 1000 parties, with a knowledge function disclosing to each party its next  $m = 100$  payments, as we decided this is a realistic knowledge function for this case. This scenario occurs when new users are on-boarded with the intent to primarily pay a single counterparty, but sporadically pay others as well. Second, in an attempt to emulate real-world payment distributions, the value and number of incoming payments of each player are drawn from the zipf [52] distribution with parameter 2, which corresponds to real-world power-law distributions with a heavy tail [10]. Each payment value is chosen according to the zipf(2.16) distribution which corresponds to the 80/20 rule [21], moved to have a mean equal to  $\frac{\max}{2}$ . We consider 500 parties, and a knowledge function with  $m = 10$ , as this is more aligned with real-world scenarios. Third, all choices are made uniformly at random, with each payment chosen uniformly from  $[0, \max]$ , employing a total of 3000 parties, again with each knowing its next  $m = 10$  payments. For all scenarios the payer of each payment is chosen uniformly at random, no channels exist initially, and all parties initially own the same amount of coins on-chain. A payer funds a new channel with the minimum of all the on-chain funds of the payer and the sum of the known future payments to the same payee plus 10 times the current payment value. The number of parties is chosen to ensure the simulation completes within a reasonable length of time.

<sup>4</sup>[gitlab.com/anonymised-submission-8778e084/virtual-channels-simulation](https://gitlab.com/anonymised-submission-8778e084/virtual-channels-simulation)

Unilateral Close								
	Intermediary		Funder		Fundee		Total	
	#txs	size	#txs	size	#txs	size	#txs	size
LVPC	3	627	2	383	2	359	$2n - 2$	$435n - 510.5$
Donner	1	204.5	4	$704 + 43n$	1	136.5	$2n$	$458n - 26$
Elmo	1	297.5	3	376	3	376	$n + 1$	$254.5n - 133$

Table III: On-chain worst-case closing efficiency comparison of virtual channel protocols with  $n$  parties

In order to avoid bias, we simulate each protocol with the same payments. We simulate each scenario with 20 distinct sets of payments and keep the average. Figs. 8 and 9 show the per-payment latency and fee respectively. Scale does not begin at zero for better visibility. Payment delays are calculated based on which protocol is used and how the payment is performed. Average latency is high as it describes the whole run, including slow on-chain payments and channel openings. Total fees are calculated by summing the fee of each “basic” event (e.g., paying an intermediary for its service). None of the 3 protocols provide fee recommendations, so we use the same baseline fees for the same events in all 3 to avoid bias. These fees are not systematically chosen, therefore Fig. 9 provides relative, not absolute, fees.

As Fig. 8 shows, delays are primarily influenced by the payment distribution and only secondarily by the protocol: The preferred receiver is the fastest and the uniform is the slowest. This is reasonable: In the preferred receiver scenario at least half of each party’s payments can be performed over a single channel, thus on-chain actions are reduced. On the other hand, in the uniform scenario payments are spread over all parties evenly, so channels are not as well utilised.

As can be seen, Elmo is the best or on par with the best protocol in every case. We attribute this to the flexibility of Elmo, as it is both variadic and recursive and thus can exploit the cheapest payment method in every scenario. In particular, Donner is consistently the most fee-heavy protocol and LVPC the slowest. Elmo experiences similar delays to Donner and slightly higher fees than LVPC.

## VII. DISCUSSION AND FUTURE WORK

**a) Domino attack:** In [4] the Domino attack is presented. In a nutshell, it claims that a malicious party can force other channels to close. Applying this mechanism to the example of Figure 15,  $A$  and  $E$  open channels  $(A, B)$ ,  $(D, E)$  and  $(A, E)$  only with the intent of forcing channels  $(B, C)$  and  $(C, D)$  closed. Observe however that honest base parties are only forced to publish a single virtual transaction each and that all virtual transactions have a funding output for the corresponding channel, therefore no base channel is closed. Thus the attack does not achieve base channel closure as it intended, just the publication of a single virtual transaction per base party. Unfortunately, the channel capacity is reduced by the collateral, which is paid directly to one of the two base channel parties. Since no coins are stolen in the process, the only cost to  $B$ ,  $C$  and  $D$  is the on-chain fees for publishing a single transaction each. This is an inherent but small risk of recursive channels, which must be taken into account before allowing one’s channel to be the base of another. This risk can be eliminated by imposing a unilateral closing fee equal to the on-chain fee of publishing one transaction per base

party. This fee need not apply in case of cooperative closing nor during normal operation and can be reduced for reputable counterparties. Mechanisms for assigning inactivity blame (i.e., proving that honest parties attempted collaborative closing before closing unilaterally) can be designed but are beyond the scope of this work.

One straightforward modification to Elmo eliminates the issue of base channel capacity reduction by a Domino attack, while independently reducing on-chain footprint: from each virtual transaction, we eliminate the output that directly pays a party (e.g., first output of Fig. 3) and move the corresponding coins into the funding output of this transaction. We further ensure at the protocol level that the base party that owns these coins never allows its channel balance to fall below the collateral, until the supported virtual channel closes. This improvement ensures that the collateral automatically becomes available to use in the base channel after the virtual one closes, effectively keeping more funds off-chain even after a Domino attack.

**b) Future work:** A number of features can be added to our protocol for additional efficiency, usability and flexibility. First of all, in our current construction, each time a particular channel  $C$  acts as a base channel for a new virtual channel, one more “virtualisation layer” is added. When one of its owners wants to close  $C$ , it has to put on-chain as many transactions as there are virtualisation layers. Also the timelocks associated with closing a virtual channel increase with the number of virtualisation layers of its base channels. Both these issues can be alleviated by extending the opening and cooperative closing subprotocol with the ability to cooperatively open and close multiple virtual channels in the same layer, either simultaneously or as an amendment to an existing virtualisation layer.

Due to the possibility of a griefing attack (Appx. E-C), the range of balances a virtual channel can support is limited by the balances of neighbouring channels. We believe that this limitation can be lifted if the Lightning-based construction for the payment layer is replaced with an eltoo-based [17] one. Since in eltoo a maliciously published old state can be simply re-spent by the honest latest state, the griefing attack is completely avoided. What is more, our protocol shares with eltoo the need for the `ANYPREVOUT` flag, therefore no additional requirements from Bitcoin would be added by this change. Lastly, due to the separation of intermediate layers with the payment layer in our pseudocode implementation (i.e., the distinction between the LN and the VIRT protocols), this change in principle needs only limited changes to our protocol.

Furthermore, any deployment of the protocol has to explicitly handle the issue of transaction fees. These include miner fees for on-chain transactions and intermediary fees for the

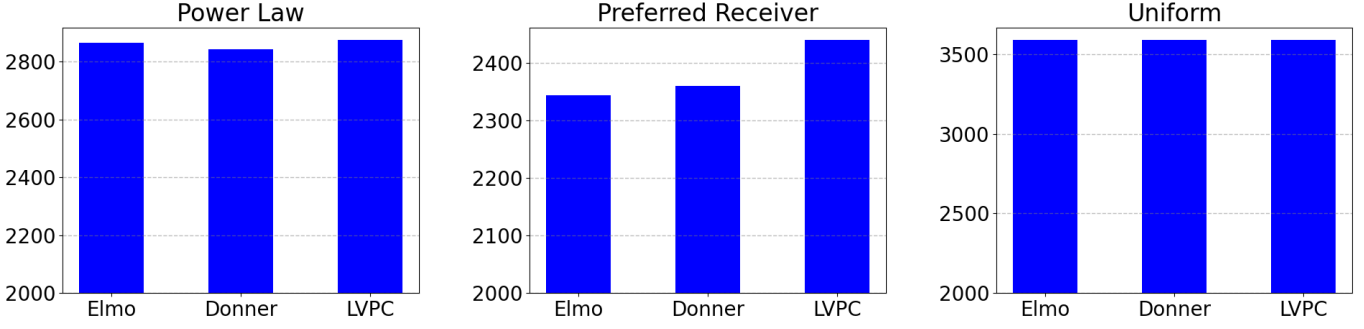


Figure 8: Average per-payment delay (including both on- and off-chain) in seconds. Less is better.

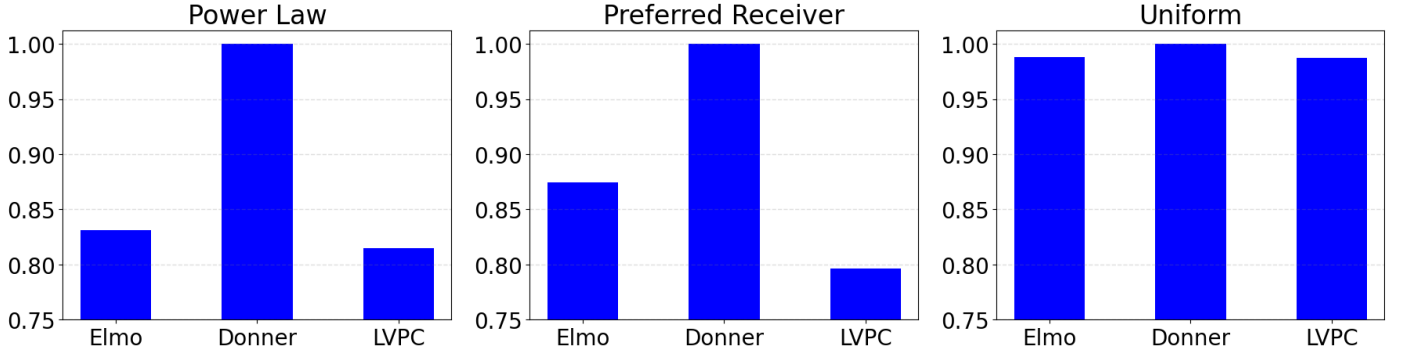


Figure 9: Average per-payment relative fee. Less is better.

parties that own base channels and facilitate opening virtual channels. These fees should take into account the fact that each intermediary has quadratic storage requirements, whereas endpoints only need constant storage, creating an opportunity for amplification attacks. Our protocol is compatible with any such fee parameterization and we leave for future work the incentive analyses that can determine concrete values for such intermediary fees.

In order to increase readability and to keep focus on the salient points of the construction, our protocol does not exploit a number of possible optimisations. These include a number of techniques employed in Lightning that drastically reduce storage requirements, such as storage of per-update secrets in  $O(\log n)$  space<sup>5</sup>, along with a variety of possible improvements to our novel virtual subprotocol.

As mentioned before, we conjecture that a variadic virtual channel protocol with unlimited lifetime needs each party to store an exponential number of signatures if ANYPREVOUT is not available. We leave proof of this as future work.

Last but not least, the current analysis gives no privacy guarantees for the protocol, as it does not employ onion packets [16] like Lightning. Furthermore,  $\mathcal{G}_{\text{Chan}}$  leaks all messages to the ideal adversary therefore theoretically no privacy is offered at all. Nevertheless, onion packets can be incorporated in the current construction. Intuitively our construction leaks less data than Lightning for the same multi-hop payments, as

intermediaries in our case are not notified on each payment, contrary to multi-hop payments in Lightning. Therefore a future extension can improve the privacy of the construction and formally demonstrate exact privacy guarantees.

Several possible usability upgrades are discussed in Appx. C.

## VIII. CONCLUSION

In this work we presented Elmo, a construction for the establishment and optimistic teardown of payment channels without posting transactions on-chain. Such a virtual channel can be opened over a path of base channels of any length, i.e., the constructor is *variadic*.

The base channels themselves can be virtual, therefore our construction is *recursive*. A key performance characteristic of our construction is its optimal round complexity for on-chain channel closing: one transaction is required by any party to turn the virtual channel into a simple one and one more transaction is needed to close it.

We formally described the protocol in the UC setting, provided a suitable ideal functionality and finally proved the indistinguishability of the protocol and functionality, along with the balance security properties that ensure no loss of funds. This is achieved through the use of the ANYPREVOUT sighash flag, which is a feature that will in all likelihood be added in the next Bitcoin update.

<sup>5</sup><https://github.com/lightning/bolts/blob/master/03-transactions.md#efficient-per-commitment-secret-storage>



## REFERENCES

- [1] Armknecht, F., Karame, G.O., Mandal, A., Youssef, F., Zenner, E.: Ripple: Overview and outlook. In: Trust and Trustworthy Computing - 8th International Conference, TRUST 2015, Heraklion, Greece, August 24-26, 2015, Proceedings. pp. 163–180 (2015). [https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-319-22846-4\\_10](https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-319-22846-4_10)
- [2] Aumayr, L., Ersoy, O., Erwig, A., Faust, S., Hostáková, K., Maffei, M., Moreno-Sanchez, P., Riahi, S.: Generalized bitcoin-compatible channels. IACR Cryptol. ePrint Arch. p. 476 (2020)
- [3] Aumayr, L., Maffei, M., Ersoy, O., Erwig, A., Faust, S., Riahi, S., Hostáková, K., Moreno-Sanchez, P.: Bitcoin-compatible virtual channels. In: 2021 IEEE Symposium on Security and Privacy (SP). pp. 901–918 (2021). <https://doi.org/10.1109/SP40001.2021.00097>
- [4] Aumayr, L., Moreno-Sanchez, P., Kate, A., Maffei, M.: Breaking and fixing virtual channels: Domino attack and donner. In: 30th Annual Network and Distributed System Security Symposium, NDSS 2023, San Diego, California, USA, February 27 - March 3, 2023. The Internet Society (2023). <https://www.ndss-symposium.org/ndss-paper/breaking-and-fixing-virtual-channels-domino-attack-and-donner/>
- [5] Avarikioti, G., Kogias, E.K., Wattenhofer, R., Zindros, D.: Brick: Asynchronous payment channels (2020)
- [6] Back, A., Corallo, M., Dashjr, L., Friedenbach, M., Maxwell, G., Miller, A., Poelstra, A., Timón, J., Wuille, P.: Enabling blockchain innovations with pegged sidechains (2014)
- [7] Badertscher, C., Canetti, R., Hesse, J., Tackmann, B., Zikas, V.: Universal composition with global subroutines: Capturing global setup within plain UC. In: Theory of Cryptography - 18th International Conference, TCC 2020, Durham, NC, USA, November 16-19, 2020, Proceedings, Part III. pp. 1–30 (2020). [https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-030-64381-2\\_1](https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-030-64381-2_1)
- [8] Badertscher, C., Gaži, P., Kiayias, A., Russell, A., Zikas, V.: Ouroboros genesis: Composable proof-of-stake blockchains with dynamic availability. In: Proceedings of the 2018 ACM SIGSAC Conference on Computer and Communications Security. pp. 913–930. ACM (2018)
- [9] Badertscher, C., Maurer, U., Tschudi, D., Zikas, V.: Bitcoin as a transaction ledger: A composable treatment. In: Annual International Cryptology Conference. pp. 324–356. Springer (2017)
- [10] Broder, A.Z., Kumar, R., Maghoul, F., Raghavan, P., Rajagopalan, S., Stata, R., Tomkins, A., Wiener, J.L.: Graph structure in the web. Comput. Networks **33**(1-6), 309–320 (2000). [https://doi.org/10.1016/S1389-1286\(00\)00083-9](https://doi.org/10.1016/S1389-1286(00)00083-9)
- [11] Burchert, C., Decker, C., Wattenhofer, R.: Scalable funding of bitcoin micropayment channel networks. In: The Royal Society (2018). <https://doi.org/10.1098/rsos.180089>
- [12] Canetti, R.: Universally composable security: A new paradigm for cryptographic protocols. In: 42nd Annual Symposium on Foundations of Computer Science, FOCS 2001, 14-17 October 2001, Las Vegas, Nevada, USA. pp. 136–145 (2001). <https://doi.org/10.1109/SFCS.2001.959888>
- [13] Chakravarty, M.M.T., Coretti, S., Fitzer, M., Gazi, P., Kant, P., Kiayias, A., Russell, A.: Hydra: Fast isomorphic state channels. Cryptology ePrint Archive, 2020/299
- [14] Chakravarty, M.M.T., Kireev, R., MacKenzie, K., McHale, V., Müller, J., Nemish, A., Nester, C., Peyton Jones, M., Thompson, S., Valentine, R., Wadler, P.: Functional blockchain contracts (2019). <https://iohk.io/en/research/library/papers/functional-blockchain-contracts/>
- [15] Croman, K., Decker, C., Eyal, I., Gencer, A.E., Juels, A., Kosba, A., Miller, A., Saxena, P., Shi, E., Sirer, E.G., et al.: On scaling decentralized blockchains. In: Financial Cryptography and Data Security. pp. 106–125. Springer (2016)
- [16] Danezis, G., Goldberg, I.: Sphinx: A compact and provably secure mix format. In: Security and Privacy, 2009 30th IEEE Symposium on. pp. 269–282. IEEE (2009)
- [17] Decker, C., Russell, R., Osuntokun, O.: eltoo: A simple layer2 protocol for bitcoin
- [18] Decker, C., Towns, A.: Sighash\_anyprevout for taproot scripts
- [19] Decker, C., Wattenhofer, R.: A fast and scalable payment network with bitcoin duplex micropayment channels. In: Symposium on Self-Stabilizing Systems. pp. 3–18. Springer (2015)
- [20] Dong, M., Liang, Q., Li, X., Liu, J.: Celer network: Bring internet scale to every blockchain (2018)
- [21] Dunford, R., Su, Q., Tamang, E.: The pareto principle. The Plymouth Student Scientist **7**, 140–148 (2014). <https://doi.org/10.4135/9781412950596.n394>, <http://hdl.handle.net/10026.1/14054>
- [22] Dziembowski, S., Ekeke, L., Faust, S., Hesse, J., Hostáková, K.: Multi-party virtual state channels. In: Ishai, Y., Rijmen, V. (eds.) International Conference on the Theory and Applications of Cryptographic Techniques, EUROCRYPT. pp. 625–656 (2019). [https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-030-17653-2\\_21](https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-030-17653-2_21)
- [23] Dziembowski, S., Ekeke, L., Faust, S., Malinowski, D.: Perun: Virtual payment hubs over cryptocurrencies. In: IEEE Symposium on Security and Privacy (SP). pp. 344–361. IEEE Computer Society, Los Alamitos, CA, USA (May 2019). <https://doi.org/10.1109/SP.2019.00020>
- [24] Dziembowski, S., Fabiański, G., Faust, S., Riahi, S.: Lower bounds for off-chain protocols: Exploring the limits of plasma. Cryptology ePrint Archive, Report 2020/175
- [25] Dziembowski, S., Faust, S., Hostáková, K.: General state channel networks. In: Computer and Communications Security, CCS. pp. 949–966 (2018). <https://doi.org/10.1145/3243734.3243856>
- [26] Egger, C., Moreno-Sanchez, P., Maffei, M.: Atomic multi-channel updates with constant collateral in bitcoin-compatible payment-channel networks. In: Conference on Computer and Communications Security, SIGSAC. pp. 801–815. CCS '19 (2019). <https://doi.org/10.1145/3319535.3345666>
- [27] Gaži, P., Kiayias, A., Zindros, D.: Proof-of-stake sidechains. In: Symposium on Security and Privacy, SP. pp. 677–694 (2019). <https://doi.org/10.1109/SP.2019.00040>
- [28] Green, M., Miers, I.: Bolt: Anonymous payment channels for decentralized currencies. In: Proceedings of the 2017 ACM SIGSAC Conference on Computer and Communications Security. p. 473–489. CCS '17, Association for Computing Machinery, New York, NY, USA (2017). <https://doi.org/10.1145/3133956.3134093>
- [29] Gudgeon, L., Moreno-Sanchez, P., Roos, S., McCorry, P., Gervais, A.: Sok: Layer-two blockchain protocols. In: Financial Cryptography and Data Security FC. pp. 201–226 (2020). [https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-030-51280-4\\_12](https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-030-51280-4_12)
- [30] Harris, J., Zohar, A.: Flood & loot: A systemic attack on the lightning network. In: Conference on Advances in Financial Technologies. pp. 202–213. AFT (2020). <https://doi.org/10.1145/3419614.3423248>
- [31] Jourenko, M., Larangeira, M., Tanaka, K.: Lightweight virtual payment channels. In: Cryptology and Network Security. pp. 365–384 (2020)
- [32] Katz, J., Maurer, U., Tackmann, B., Zikas, V.: Universally composable synchronous computation. In: Theory of Cryptography - 10th Theory of Cryptography Conference, TCC 2013, Tokyo, Japan, March 3-6, 2013. Proceedings. pp. 477–498 (2013). [https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-642-36594-2\\_27](https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-642-36594-2_27)
- [33] Khalil, R., Gervais, A.: Revive: Rebalancing off-blockchain payment networks. In: Conference on Computer and Communications Security, CCS. pp. 439–453 (2017). <https://doi.org/10.1145/3133956.3134033>
- [34] Kiayias, A., Litos, O.S.T.: A composable security treatment of the lightning network. In: Computer Security Foundations Symposium, CSF. pp. 334–349 (2020). <https://doi.org/10.1109/CSF49147.2020.00031>
- [35] Kiayias, A., Zindros, D.: Proof-of-work sidechains. In: Workshop on Trusted Smart Contracts. pp. 21–34 (2019). [https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-030-43725-1\\_3](https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-030-43725-1_3)
- [36] Konstantopoulos, G.: Plasma cash: Towards more efficient plasma constructions (2019)
- [37] Lee, J., Kim, S., Park, S., Moon, S.M.: Routee: A secure payment network routing hub using trusted execution environments (2020)
- [38] Liao, J., Zhang, F., Sun, W., Shi, W.: Speedster: An efficient multi-party state channel via enclaves. In: Asia Conference on Computer and Communications Security, ASIACCS. pp. 637–651 (2022). <https://doi.org/10.1145/3488932.3523259>
- [39] Lind, J., Eyal, I., Pietzuch, P.R., Sirer, E.G.: Teechan: Payment channels using trusted execution environments. CoRR **abs/1612.07766** (2016)
- [40] Lind, J., Naor, O., Eyal, I., Kelbert, F., Sirer, E.G., Pietzuch, P.: Teechain: A secure payment network with asynchronous blockchain

- access. In: Symposium on Operating Systems Principles. pp. 63–79. SOSP '19 (2019). <https://doi.org/10.1145/3341301.3359627>
- [41] Lindell, Y.: How to simulate it - A tutorial on the simulation proof technique. In: *Tutorials on the Foundations of Cryptography*, pp. 277–346 (2017). [https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-319-57048-8\\_6](https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-319-57048-8_6)
- [42] Malavolta, G., Moreno-Sanchez, P., Kate, A., Maffei, M.: Silentwhispers: Enforcing security and privacy in decentralized credit networks (2016)
- [43] Malavolta, G., Moreno-Sanchez, P., Schneidewind, C., Kate, A., Maffei, M.: Anonymous multi-hop locks for blockchain scalability and interoperability. In: *Network and Distributed System Security Symposium, NDSS* (2019)
- [44] Maxwell, G., Poelstra, A., Seurin, Y., Wuille, P.: Simple schnorr multi-signatures with applications to bitcoin. *Des. Codes Cryptogr.* **87**(9), 2139–2164 (2019). <https://doi.org/10.1007/s10623-019-00608-x>, <https://doi.org/10.1007/s10623-019-00608-x>
- [45] Mazieres, D.: The stellar consensus protocol: A federated model for internet-level consensus. Stellar Development Foundation (2015)
- [46] Milgram, S.: The small world problem. *Psychology Today* **1**, 61–67 (May 1967)
- [47] Miller, A., Bentov, I., Kumaresan, R., Cordi, C., McCorry, P.: Sprites and state channels: Payment networks that go faster than lightning (2017), arXiv:1702.05812
- [48] Nakamoto, S.: Bitcoin: A peer-to-peer electronic cash system (2008)
- [49] Nick, J., Ruffing, T., Seurin, Y.: Musig2: Simple two-round schnorr multi-signatures. In: Malkin, T., Peikert, C. (eds.) *Advances in Cryptology - CRYPTO 2021 - 41st Annual International Cryptology Conference, CRYPTO 2021, Virtual Event, August 16-20, 2021, Proceedings, Part I. Lecture Notes in Computer Science*, vol. 12825, pp. 189–221. Springer (2021). [https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-030-84242-0\\_8](https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-030-84242-0_8), [https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-030-84242-0\\_8](https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-030-84242-0_8)
- [50] Poon, J., Buterin, V.: Plasma: Scalable autonomous smart contracts
- [51] Poon, J., Dryja, T.: The bitcoin lightning network: Scalable off-chain instant payments. <https://lightning.network/lightning-network-paper.pdf> (January 2016)
- [52] Powers, D.M.W.: Applications and explanations of Zipf’s law. In: *New Methods in Language Processing and Computational Natural Language Learning* (1998)
- [53] Prihodko, P., Zhigulin, S., Sahno, M., Ostrovskiy, A., Osuntokun, O.: Flare: An approach to routing in lightning network (2016)
- [54] Roos, S., Moreno-Sanchez, P., Kate, A., Goldberg, I.: Settling payments fast and private: Efficient decentralized routing for path-based transactions. In: *Network and Distributed System Security Symposium, NDSS* (2018)
- [55] Sivaraman, V., Venkatakrishnan, S.B., Alizadeh, M., Fanti, G.C., Viswanath, P.: Routing cryptocurrency with the spider network. *CoRR abs/1809.05088* (2018)
- [56] Spilman, J.: Anti dos for tx replacement. <https://lists.linuxfoundation.org/pipermail/bitcoin-dev/2013-April/002433.html> (April 2013)
- [57] Wood, G.: Ethereum: A secure decentralised generalised transaction ledger
- [58] Zhao, L., Shuang, H., Xu, S., Huang, W., Cui, R., Bettadpur, P., Lie, D.: Sok: Hardware security support for trustworthy execution (2019)

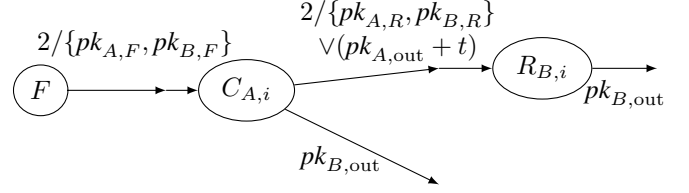


Figure 10: Funding, commitment and revocation transactions

## APPENDIX A IN-DEPTH PROTOCOL DESCRIPTION

Let us first introduce some notation and concepts used, among others, in figures with transactions. Reflecting the UTXO model, each transaction is represented by a circular, named node with one incoming edge per input and one outgoing edge per output. Each output can be connected with at most one input of another transaction; cycles are not allowed. Above an input or an output edge we note the number of coins it carries. In some figures the coins are omitted. Below an input we place the data carried and below an output its spending conditions (a.k.a. script). For a connected input-output pair, we omit the data of the input.  $\sigma_K$  is a signature on the transaction by  $sk_K$ ; in all cases, signatures are carried by inputs. An output marked with  $pk_K$  needs a signature by  $sk_K$  to be spent.  $m/\{pk_1, \dots, pk_n\}$  is an  $m$ -of- $n$  multisig ( $m \leq n$ ), i.e., a spending condition that needs signatures from  $m$  distinct keys among  $sk_1, \dots, sk_n$ . If  $k$  is a spending condition, then  $k + t$  is the same spending condition but with a relative timelock of  $t$ . Spending conditions or data can be combined with logical AND ( $\wedge$ ) and OR ( $\vee$ ), so an output  $a \vee b$  can be spent either by matching the condition  $a$  or the condition  $b$ , and an input  $\sigma_a \wedge \sigma_b$  carries signatures from  $sk_a$  and  $sk_b$ . Note that all signatures for all multisig outputs make use of the ANYPREVOUT hash type.

### A. Simple Channels

In a similar vein to earlier UTXO-based PCN proposals, having an open channel essentially means having very specific keys, transactions and signatures at hand, as well as checking the ledger periodically and being ready to take action if misbehaviour is detected. Let us first consider a simple channel that has been established between *Alice* and *Bob* where the former owns  $c_A$  and the latter  $c_B$  coins – we refer the reader to Section IV for an overview of the opening procedure. There are three sets of transactions at play: A *funding* transaction that is put on-chain, *commitment* transactions that are stored off-chain and spend the funding output on channel closure and off-chain *revocation* transactions that spend commitment outputs in case of misbehaviour (c.f. Figure 10).

In particular, there is a single on-chain funding transaction that spends  $c_A + c_B$  coins (originally belonging to the funder), with a single output that is encumbered with a  $2/\{pk_{A,F}, pk_{B,F}\}$  multisig and carries  $c_A + c_B$  coins.

Next, there are two commitment transactions, one per party, each of which can spend the funding tx and produce two outputs with  $c_A$  and  $c_B$  coins each. The two txs differ in the outputs’ spending conditions: The  $c_A$  output in *Alice*’s commitment tx can be spent either by *Alice* after it has

been on-chain for a pre-agreed period (i.e., it is encumbered with a *timelock*), or by a *revocation* transaction (discussed below) via a 2-of-2 multisig between the counterparties. The  $c_B$  output can be spent only by *Bob* without a timelock. *Bob*'s commitment tx is symmetric: the  $c_A$  output can be spent only by *Alice* without timelock and the  $c_B$  output can be spent either by *Bob* after the timelock expiration or by a revocation tx. When a new pair of commitment txs are created (either during channel opening or on each update) *Alice* signs *Bob*'s commitment tx and sends him the signature (and vice-versa), therefore *Alice* can later unilaterally sign and publish her commitment tx but not *Bob*'s (and vice-versa).

Last, there are  $2m$  revocation transactions, where  $m$  is the total number of updates of the channel. The  $j$ th revocation tx held by an endpoint spends the output carrying the counterparty's funds in the counterparty's  $j$ th commitment tx. It has a single output spendable immediately by the aforementioned endpoint. Each endpoint stores  $m$  revocation txs, one for each superseded commitment tx. This creates a disincentive for an endpoint to cheat by using any other commitment transaction than its most recent one to close the channel: the timelock on the commitment output permits its counterparty to use the corresponding revocation transaction and thus claim the cheater's funds. Endpoints do not have a revocation tx for the last commitment transaction, therefore these can be safely published. For a channel update to be completed, the endpoints must exchange the signatures for the revocation txs that spend the commitment txs that just became obsolete.

Observe that the above logic is essentially a simplification of LN. In particular, Elmo does not use Hashed TimeLocked Contracts (HTLCs), which enable multi-hop payments in LN.

### B. Virtual Channels

In order to gain intuition on how virtual channels work, we will first go in depth over the data each party stores locally while the channel is open. Consider  $n - 1$  simple channels between  $n$  honest parties as before.  $P_1$ , the funder, and  $P_n$ , the fundee, want to open a virtual channel over these base channels. Before opening the virtual, each base channel is entirely independent, having different unique keys, separate on-chain funding outputs, a possibly different balance and number of updates. After the  $n$  parties follow our novel virtual channel opening protocol (c.f. Section IV), they will all hold off-chain a number of new, *virtual* transactions that spend their respective funding transactions. The *virtual* transactions can be spent by *bridge* transactions which in turn are spendable by new commitment transactions in a manner that ensures fair funds allocation for all honest parties. *Bridge* transactions take advantage of ANYPREVOUT to ensure that each of  $P_1, P_n$  only needs to maintain a single commitment transaction.

In particular, apart from the transactions of simple channels (i.e., commitment and revocation txs), each of the two endpoints also has an *initiator* transaction that spends the funding output of its only base channel and produces two outputs: one new funding output for the base channel and one *virtual* output (c.f. Figures 11, 60). If the initiator transaction ends up on-chain honestly, the latter output carries coins that will directly or indirectly fund the funding output of the virtual channel. This virtual funding output can in turn be spent by

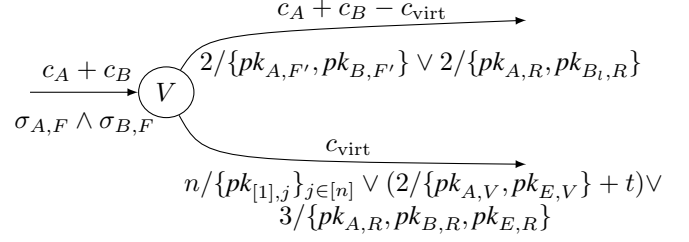


Figure 11:  $A - E$  virtual channel:  $A$ 's initiator transaction. Spends the funding output of the  $A - B$  channel. Can be used if  $B$  has not published a virtual transaction yet.

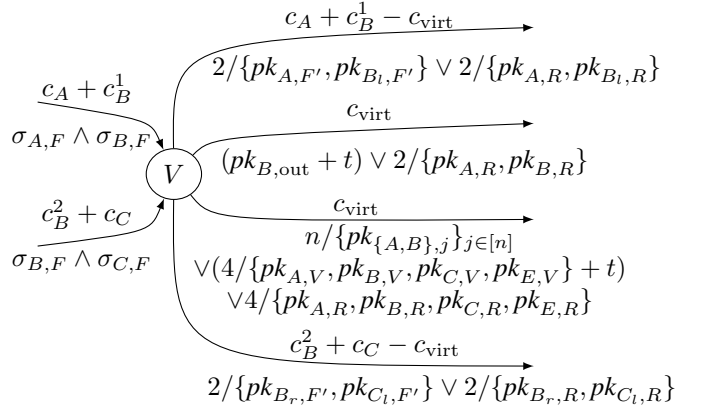


Figure 12:  $A - E$  virtual channel:  $B$ 's initiator transaction. Spends the funding outputs of the  $A - B$  and  $B - C$  channels. Can be used if neither  $A$  nor  $C$  have published a virtual transaction yet.

a commitment transaction that functions exactly in the same manner as in a simple channel.

Intermediaries on the other hand store three sets of virtual transactions (Figure 59): *initiator* (Figure 12), *extend-interval* (Figure 13) and *merge-intervals* (Figure 14). Each intermediary has one initiator tx, which spends the party's two funding outputs and produces four: one funding output for each base channel, one output that directly pays the intermediary coins equal to the total value in the virtual channel, and one *virtual output*, with coins that can potentially fund the virtual channel. If both funding outputs are still unspent, publishing its initiator tx is the only way for an honest intermediary to close either of its channels and retrieve its collateral.

Furthermore, each intermediary has  $O(n)$  extend-interval transactions. Being an intermediary, the party is involved in two base channels, each having its own funding output. In case exactly one of these two funding outputs has been spent honestly and the other is still unspent, publishing an extend-interval transaction is the only way for the party to close the base channel corresponding to the unspent output and retrieve its collateral. Such a transaction consumes two outputs: the only available funding output and a suitable virtual output, as discussed below. An extend-interval tx has three outputs: A funding output replacing the one just spent, one output that



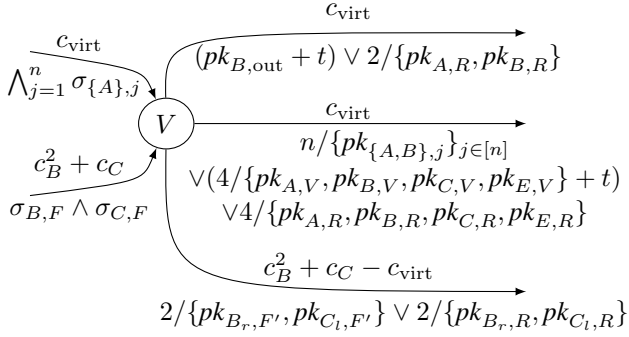


Figure 13:  $A-E$  virtual channel: One of  $B$ 's extend interval transactions.  $\sigma$  is the signature. Spends the virtual output of  $A$ 's initiator transaction and the funding output of the  $B-C$  channel. Can be used if  $A$  has already published its initiator transaction and  $C$  has not published a virtual transaction yet.

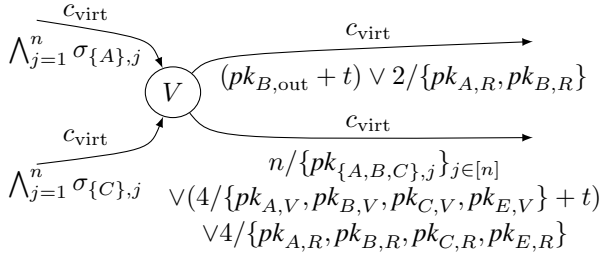


Figure 14:  $A-E$  virtual channel: One of  $B$ 's merge intervals transactions. Spends the virtual outputs of  $A$ 's and  $C$ 's virtual transactions. Usable if both  $A$  and  $C$  have already published their initiator transactions.

directly pays the intermediary coins equal to the total value of the virtual channel, and one virtual output.

Last, each intermediary has  $O(n^2)$  merge-intervals transactions. If both base channels' funding outputs of the party have been spent honestly, publishing a merge-intervals transaction is the only way for the party to retrieve its collateral. Such a transaction consumes two suitable virtual outputs, as discussed below. It has two outputs: One that directly pays the intermediary coins equal to the total value of the virtual channel, and one virtual output.

Note that each output of a virtual transaction has a *revocation* spending method which needs a signature from every party that could end up owning the output coins: each funding output is signed by the two parties of the corresponding channel, each refund output is signed by the transaction owner and the party to the left (giving  $c_{virt}$  coins to the left party if the owner acts maliciously), whereas each virtual output is signed by the transaction owner, the right party and the two virtual channel parties. If the owner acts maliciously,  $c_{virt}$  are given to the right party. The virtual channel parties have to sign as well since this output may end up funding their channel – lack of such signatures would allow two colluding intermediaries to claim the virtual output for themselves. The revocation spending conditions take precedence over others because (i) they do not

have a timelock and (ii) any other spending condition without a timelock (e.g. the  $n$ -of- $n$  multisig of an initiator transaction) is transitively spendable by a transaction in which the only non-timelocked spending condition is the revocation.

Each virtual transaction is accompanied by a *bridge* transaction. Any virtual output may end up funding the virtual channel, but the various virtual outputs do not have the same script, thus there cannot be a single commitment transaction able to spend all of them. Without the bridge transaction, the parties of the virtual channel would have to keep track of  $O(n^3)$  commitment transactions to be able to close their channel securely in every case, making channel updates expensive. This is fixed by the bridge transactions, which all have exactly the same output, unifying the interface between the virtualisation and the payment transactions and thus making virtual channel updates as cheap as simple channel updates.

To understand why this multitude of virtual transactions is needed, we now zoom out from the individual party and discuss the dynamic of unilateral closing as a whole. The first party  $P_i$  that wishes to close a base channel observes that its funding output(s) remain(s) unspent and publishes its initiator transaction. First, this allows  $P_i$  to use its commitment transaction to close the base channel. Second, in case  $P_i$  is an intermediary, it directly regains the coins it has locked for the virtual channel as collateral. Third, it produces a virtual output that can only be consumed by  $P_{i-1}$  and  $P_{i+1}$ , the parties adjacent to  $P_i$  (if any) with specific extend-interval transactions. The virtual output of this extend-interval transaction can in turn be spent by specific extend-interval transactions of  $P_{i-2}$  or  $P_{i+2}$  that have not published a virtual transaction yet (if any) and so on for the next neighbours. The idea is that each party only needs to publish a single virtual transaction to “collapse” the virtual layer and each virtual output uniquely defines the continuous interval of parties that have already published a virtual transaction and only allows parties at the edges of this interval to extend it. This extension rule prevents malicious parties from indefinitely replacing a virtual output with a new one. As the name suggests, merge-intervals transactions are published by parties that are adjacent to two parties that have already published their virtual transactions and in effect joins the two intervals into one.

Each virtual output can also be used to fund the virtual channel after a timelock, to protect from unresponsive parties blocking the virtual channel indefinitely. This in turn means that if an intermediary observes either of its funding outputs being spent, it has to publish its suitable virtual transaction before the timelock expires to avoid losing funds. What is more, all virtual outputs need the signature of all parties to be spent before the timelock (i.e., they have an  $n$ -of- $n$  multisig) in order to prevent colluding parties from faking the intervals progression. Thanks to Schnorr signatures and the ability to aggregate them [44], [49] however, the on-chain footprint of the  $n$  signatures is reduced to that of a single signature. To ensure that parties have an opportunity to react, the timelock of a virtual output is the maximum of the required timelocks of the intermediaries that can spend it. Let  $p$  be a global constant representing the maximum number of blocks a party is allowed to stay offline between activations without becoming negligent (the latter term is explained in detail later), and  $s$  the maximum number of blocks needed for an honest transaction to enter



the blockchain after being published, as in Proposition 6 of Section H. The required timelock of a party is  $p + s$  if its channel is simple, or  $p + \sum_{j=2}^{n-1} (s - 1 + t_j)$  if the channel is virtual, where  $t_j$  is the required timelock of the base channel of the  $j$ th intermediary's channel. The only exception are virtual outputs with an interval that includes all parties, which are just funding outputs for the virtual channel: an interval with all parties cannot be further extended, therefore one spending method and the timelock are dropped.

We here note that a typical extend-interval and merge-intervals transaction has to be able to spend different outputs, depending on the order other base parties publish their virtual transactions. For example,  $P_3$ 's extend-interval tx that extends the interval  $\{P_1, P_2\}$  to  $\{P_1, P_2, P_3\}$  must be able to spend both the virtual output of  $P_2$ 's initiator transaction and  $P_2$ 's extend-interval transaction which has spent  $P_1$ 's initiator transaction. In order for the received signatures for virtual and commitment txs to be valid for multiple previous outputs, the previously proposed ANYPREVOUT sighash flag [18] is needed to be added to Bitcoin. We conjecture that, if this flag is not available, then it is impossible to build variadic recursive virtual channels for which each party only needs to (i) publish  $O(1)$  on-chain transactions to open or close a channel and (ii) store a subexponential (in the number of intermediaries, payments and recursion layers) number of  $O(1)$ -sized transactions off-chain.<sup>6</sup> We hope this work provides additional motivation for this flag to be included in the future.

Note also that the newly established virtual channel can itself act as a base for further virtual channels, as its funding output can be unilaterally put on-chain in a pre-agreed maximum number of blocks. This in turn means that, as discussed above, a further virtual channel must take the delay of its virtual base channels into account to determine the timelocks needed for its own virtual outputs.

Let a single *channel round* be a series of messages starting from the funder and hop by hop reaching the fundee and back again. For the actual protocol that establishes a virtual channel 6 channel rounds are needed (c.f. Figure 35). The first communicates parties' identities, their funding keys, revocation keys and their neighbours' channel balances, the second creates new commitment transactions, the third communicates keys for virtual transactions (a.k.a. virtual keys), all parties' coins and desired timelocks, the fourth and the fifth communicate signatures for the virtual transactions (signatures for virtual outputs and funding outputs respectively) and the sixth shares revocation signatures for the old channel states.

Cooperative closing is quite intuitive (c.f. Figures 52, 53, 54, 55 and 71). It can be initiated by any party, one and a half communication rounds are needed.

<sup>6</sup>To see why, consider a virtual channel over  $k + 1$  players who close the channel non-cooperatively via on-chain interaction. Assuming the  $(k + 1)$ -th party goes last, the protocol should be able to accommodate any possible activation sequence for the first  $k$  parties. Consecutive pairs of parties  $(i, i + 1)$  need to be reactive to each other's posted transactions since they share a base channel. It follows that for each  $i$  we can assign either "L" or "R" signifying the directionality of reaction, resulting in a total of  $2^{k-1}$  different sequences. Without ANYPREVOUT, the  $(k + 1)$ -th party needs a different transaction to interact with the outcome of each sequence, hence blowing up its local storage. The formalization of this argument is outside the scope of the present work.

The funder builds new commitment txs, which once again spend the funding outputs that the virtual txs spent before, just like prior to opening the virtual channel. In particular, these new txs make the base channels independent once more. The funder sends its signature on the new commitment tx to the first intermediary; the latter similarly builds, signs and sends a new commitment tx signature to the second intermediary and so on until the fundee. The fundee responds with its own commitment tx signatures, along with signatures revoking the previous commitment tx and virtual txs. This is repeated backwards until revocations reach the funder. Finally the funder sends its revocation to its neighbour and it to the next, until the revocations reach the fundee. The channel has now closed cooperatively.

At a high level, this procedure works without risk for the same reasons that a channel update does: Each party signs a new commitment transaction that guarantees it the same amount of funds as the last state before cooperatively closing did. It then revokes the state it had before closing only after receiving signatures for all relevant new commitment transactions. Furthermore, it only considers the closing complete if it receives revocations for all states before closing. If anything goes wrong in the process, the party can always unilaterally close, either in the last state before closing, or using the new commitment txs.

As for the unilateral closing, let us now turn to an example in order to better grasp how our construction plays out on-chain in practice (Figure 15). Consider an established virtual channel on top of 4 preexisting simple base channels. Let  $A, B, C, D$  and  $E$  be the relevant parties, which control the  $(A, B)$ ,  $(B, C)$ ,  $(C, D)$  and  $(D, E)$  base channels, along with the  $(A, E)$  virtual channel. After carrying out some payments,  $A$  decides to unilaterally close the virtual channel. It therefore publishes its initiator transaction, thus consuming the funding output of  $(A, B)$  and producing (among others) a virtual output with the interval  $\{A\}$ .  $B$  notices this before the timelock of the virtual output expires and publishes its extend-interval transaction that consumes the aforementioned virtual output and the funding output of  $(B, C)$ , producing a virtual output with the interval  $\{A, B\}$ .  $C$  in turn publishes the corresponding extend-interval transaction, consuming the virtual output of  $B$  and the funding output of  $(C, D)$  while producing a virtual output with the interval  $\{A, B, C\}$ . Finally  $D$  publishes the last extend-interval transaction, thus producing an interval with all players. No more virtual transactions can be published. Now  $A$  can spend the virtual output of the last extend-interval transaction with the relevant bridge transaction, which can then be spent by  $A$ 's or  $E$ 's latest commitment transaction. Note that if any of  $B, C$  or  $D$  does not act within the timelock prescribed in their consumed virtual output, then  $A$  or  $E$  can spend the virtual output with the relevant bridge transaction and this with the latest commitment transaction, thus eventually  $A$  can close its virtual channel in all cases.

**a) Remark:** In order to support a virtual channel, base parties have to lock collateral for a potentially long time. A fee structure that takes this opportunity cost into consideration would bolster participation. A straightforward mechanism is for parties to agree when opening the virtual channel on a time-based fee schedule and periodically update their base channels to reflect contingent payments by the endpoints. In case of lack

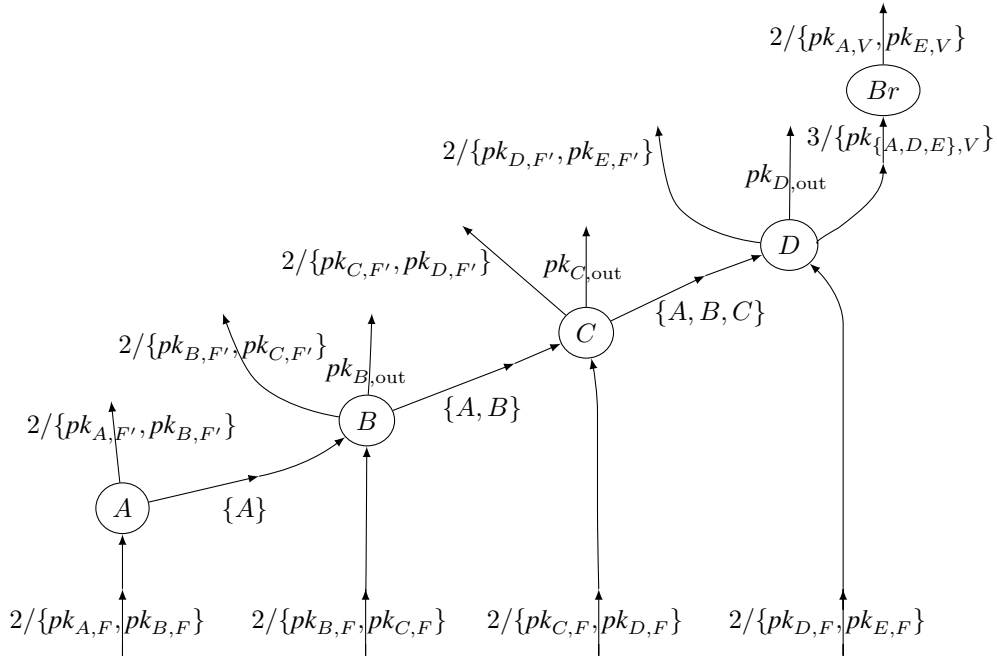


Figure 15: 4 simple channels supporting a virtual.  $A$  starts closing by publishing its initiator tx, then parties  $B$ – $D$  each publishes its extend-interval tx with the relevant interval. No party is negligent. Virtual outputs are marked with their interval.

of cooperation for an update, a party can simply close its base channel. The details of such a scheme are outside the scope of this work.

## APPENDIX B UNIVERSAL COMPOSITION FRAMEWORK

In this work we embrace the Universal Composition (UC) framework [12] to model parties, network interactions, adversarial influence and corruptions, as well as formalise and prove security.

UC closely follows and expands upon the paradigm of simulation-based security [41]. For a particular real world protocol, the main goal of UC is allow us to provide a simple “interface”, the ideal world functionality, that describes what the protocol achieves in an ideal way. The functionality takes the inputs of all protocol parties and knows which parties are corrupted, therefore it normally can achieve the intention of the protocol in a much more straightforward manner. At a high level, once we have the protocol and the functionality defined, our goal is to prove that no probabilistic polynomial-time (PPT) Interactive Turing Machine (ITM) can distinguish whether it is interacting with the real world protocol or the ideal world functionality. If this is true we then say that the protocol UC-realises the functionality.

The principal contribution of UC is the following: Once a functionality that corresponds to a particular protocol is found, any other higher level protocol that internally uses the former protocol can instead use the functionality. This allows cryptographic proofs to compose and obviates the need for re-proving the security of every underlying primitive in every new application that uses it, therefore vastly improving the efficiency and scalability of the effort of cryptographic proofs.

An Interactive Turing Instance (ITI) is a single instantiation of an ITM. In UC, a number of ITIs execute and send messages to each other. At each moment only one ITI is executing (has the “execution token”) and when it sends a message to another ITI, it transfers the execution token to the receiver. Messages can be sent either locally (inputs, outputs) or over the network. There is no notion of time built in UC – the only requirement is that the total number of execution steps each ITI takes throughout the experiment is polynomial in the security parameter.

The first ITI to be activated is the environment  $\mathcal{E}$ . This can be an instance of any PPT ITM. This ITI encompasses everything that happens around the protocol under scrutiny, including the players that send instructions to the protocol. It also is the ITI that tries to distinguish whether it is in the real or the ideal world. Put otherwise, it plays the role of the distinguisher.

After activating and executing some code,  $\mathcal{E}$  may input a message to any party. If this execution is in the real world, then each party is an ITI running the protocol  $\Pi$ . Otherwise if the execution takes place in the ideal world, then each party is a dummy that simply relays messages to the functionality  $\mathcal{F}$ . An activated real world party then follows its code, which may instruct it to parse its input and send a message to another party via the network.

In UC the network is fully controlled by the so-called adversary  $\mathcal{A}$ , which may be any PPT ITI. Once activated by any network message, this machine can read the message contents and act adaptively, freely communicate with  $\mathcal{E}$  bidirectionally, choose to deliver the message right away, delay its delivery arbitrarily long, even corrupt it or drop it entirely. Crucially, it can also choose to corrupt any protocol party (in other words,

UC allows adaptive corruptions). Once a party is corrupted, its internal state, inputs, outputs and execution comes under the full control of  $\mathcal{A}$  for the rest of the execution. Corruptions take place covertly, so other parties do not necessarily learn which parties are corrupt. Furthermore, a corrupted party cannot become honest again.

The fact that  $\mathcal{A}$  controls the network in the real world is modelled by providing direct communication channels between  $\mathcal{A}$  and every other machine. This however poses an issue for the ideal world, as  $\mathcal{F}$  is a single party that replaces all real world parties, so the interface has to be adapted accordingly. Furthermore, if  $\mathcal{F}$  is to be as simple as possible, simulating internally all real world parties is not the way forward. This however may prove necessary in order to faithfully simulate the messages that the adversary expects to see in the real world. To solve these issues an ideal world adversary, also known as simulator  $\mathcal{S}$ , is introduced. This party can communicate freely with  $\mathcal{F}$  and completely engulfs the real world  $\mathcal{A}$ . It can therefore internally simulate real world parties and generate suitable messages so that  $\mathcal{A}$  remains oblivious to the fact that this is the ideal world. Normally messages between  $\mathcal{A}$  and  $\mathcal{E}$  are just relayed by  $\mathcal{S}$ , without modification or special handling.

From the point of view of the functionality,  $\mathcal{S}$  is untrusted, therefore any information that  $\mathcal{F}$  leaks to  $\mathcal{S}$  has to be carefully monitored by the designer. Ideally it has to be as little as possible so that  $\mathcal{S}$  does not learn more than what is needed to simulate the real world. This facilitates modelling privacy.

At any point during one of its activations,  $\mathcal{E}$  may return a binary value (either 0 or 1). The entire execution then halts. Informally, we say that  $\Pi$  UC-realises  $\mathcal{F}$ , or equivalently that the ideal and the real worlds are indistinguishable, if  $\forall \text{ PPT } \mathcal{A}, \exists \text{ PPT } \mathcal{S} : \forall \text{ PPT } \mathcal{E}$ , the distance of the distributions over the machines' random tapes of the outputs of  $\mathcal{E}$  in the two worlds is negligibly small. Note the order of quantifiers:  $\mathcal{S}$  depends on  $\mathcal{A}$ , but not on  $\mathcal{E}$ .

#### APPENDIX C FURTHER FUTURE WORK

Here we provide additional future work directions which pertain to improving the usability and reliability of the protocol. As it currently stands, the timelocks calculated for the virtual channels are based on  $p$  (Figure 32) and  $s$  (Figure 36), which are global constants that are immutable and common to all parties. The parameter  $s$  stems from the liveness guarantees of Bitcoin, as discussed in Proposition 6 and therefore cannot be tweaked. However,  $p$  represents the maximum time (in blocks) between two activations of a non-negligent party, so in principle it is possible for the parties to explicitly negotiate this value when opening a new channel and even renegotiate it after the channel has been opened if the counterparties agree. We leave this usability-augmenting protocol feature as future work.

Our protocol is not designed to “gracefully” recover from a situation in which halfway through a subprotocol, one of the counterparties starts misbehaving. Currently the only solution is to unilaterally close the channel. This however means that DoS attacks (that still do not lead to channel fund losses) are possible. A practical implementation of our protocol would need to expand the available actions and states to be able

to transparently and gracefully recover from such problems, avoiding closing the channel where possible, especially when the problem stems from network issues and not from malicious behaviour.

Additionally, our protocol does not feature one-off multi-hop payments like those possible in Lightning. This however is a useful feature in case two parties know that they will only transact once, as opening a virtual channel needs substantially more network communication than performing an one-off multi-hop payment. It would be therefore fruitful to also enable the multi-hop payment technique and allow human users to choose which method to use in each case. Likewise, optimistic cooperative on-chain closing of simple channels could be done just like in Lightning, obviating the need to wait for the revocation timelock to expire and reducing on-chain costs if the counterparty is cooperative.

#### APPENDIX D FUNCTIONALITY & SIMULATOR

##### Functionality $\mathcal{G}_{\text{Chan}}$ – general message handling rules

- On receiving input ( $\text{msg}$ ) by  $\mathcal{E}$  addressed to  $P \in \{\text{Alice}, \text{Bob}\}$ , handle it according to the corresponding rule in Fig. 17, 18, 19, 20 or 21 (if any) and subsequently send ( $\text{RELAY}, \text{msg}, P, \mathcal{E}, \text{input}$ ) to  $\mathcal{A}$ .
- On receiving ( $\text{msg}$ ) by party  $R$  addressed to  $P \in \{\text{Alice}, \text{Bob}\}$  by means of  $\text{mode} \in \{\text{output}, \text{network}\}$ , handle it according to the corresponding rule in Fig. 17, 18, 19, 20 or 21 (if any) and subsequently send ( $\text{RELAY}, \text{msg}, P, \mathcal{E}, \text{mode}$ ) to  $\mathcal{A}$ . // all messages are relayed to  $\mathcal{A}$
- On receiving ( $\text{RELAY}, \text{msg}, P, R, \text{mode}$ ) by  $\mathcal{A}$  ( $\text{mode} \in \{\text{input}, \text{output}, \text{network}\}$ ,  $P \in \{\text{Alice}, \text{Bob}\}$ ), relay  $\text{msg}$  to  $R$  as  $P$  by means of  $\text{mode}$ . //  $\mathcal{A}$  fully controls outgoing messages by  $\mathcal{G}_{\text{Chan}}$
- On receiving ( $\text{INFO}, \text{msg}$ ) by  $\mathcal{A}$ , handle ( $\text{msg}$ ) according to the corresponding rule in Fig. 17, 18, 19, 20 or 21 (if any). After handling the message or after an “ensure” fails, send ( $\text{HANDLED}, \text{msg}$ ) to  $\mathcal{A}$ . // ( $\text{INFO}, \text{msg}$ ) messages by  $\mathcal{S}$  always return control to  $\mathcal{S}$  without any side-effect to any other ITI, except if  $\mathcal{G}_{\text{Chan}}$  halts
- $\mathcal{G}_{\text{Chan}}$  keeps track of two state machines, one for each of *Alice*, *Bob*. If there are more than one suitable rules for a particular message, or if a rule matches the message for both parties, then both rule versions are executed. // the two rules act on different state machines, so the order of execution does not matter

Figure 16

Note that in UCGS [7], just like in UC, every message to an ITI may arrive via one of three channels: input, output and network. In the session of interest, input messages come from the environment  $\mathcal{E}$  in the real world, whereas in the ideal world each input message comes from the corresponding dummy party, which forwards it as received by  $\mathcal{E}$ . Outputs may be received from any subroutine (local or global). This means that

the “sender field” of inputs and outputs cannot be tampered with by  $\mathcal{E}$  or  $\mathcal{A}$ . Network messages only come from  $\mathcal{A}$ ; they may have been sent from any machine but are relayed (and possibly delayed, reordered, modified or even dropped) by  $\mathcal{A}$ . Therefore, in contrast to inputs and outputs, network messages may have a tampered “sender field”.

#### Functionality $\mathcal{G}_{\text{Chan}}$ – open state machine

$P \in \{\text{Alice}, \text{Bob}\}$

- 1: On first activation: // before handing the message
- 2:  $pk_P \leftarrow \perp$ ;  $\text{balance}_P \leftarrow 0$ ;  $\text{State}_P \leftarrow \text{UNINIT}$
- 3:  $\text{enabler}_P \leftarrow \perp$  // if we are a virtual channel, the ITI of  $P$ 's base channel
- 4:  $\text{host}_P \leftarrow \perp$  // if we are a virtual channel, the ITI of the common host of this channel and  $P$ 's base channel
- 5: On (BECAME CORRUPTED OR NEGLIGENT,  $P$ ) by  $\mathcal{A}$  or on output (ENABLER USED REVOCATION) by  $\text{host}_P$  when in any state:
- 6:  $\text{State}_P \leftarrow \text{IGNORED}$
- 7: On (INIT,  $pk$ ) by  $P$  when  $\text{State}_P = \text{UNINIT}$ :
- 8:  $pk_P \leftarrow pk$
- 9:  $\text{State}_P \leftarrow \text{INIT}$
- 10: On (OPEN,  $x$ , “ledger”, ...) by  $\text{Alice}$  when  $\text{State}_A = \text{INIT}$ :
- 11: store  $x$
- 12:  $\text{State}_A \leftarrow \text{TENTATIVE BASE OPEN}$
- 13: On (BASE OPEN) by  $\mathcal{A}$  when  $\text{State}_A = \text{TENTATIVE BASE OPEN}$ :
- 14:  $\text{balance}_A \leftarrow x$
- 15:  $\text{layer}_A \leftarrow 0$
- 16:  $\text{State}_A \leftarrow \text{OPEN}$
- 17: On (BASE OPEN) by  $\mathcal{A}$  when  $\text{State}_B = \text{INIT}$ :
- 18:  $\text{layer}_B \leftarrow 0$
- 19:  $\text{State}_B \leftarrow \text{OPEN}$
- 20: On (OPEN,  $x$ , hops  $\neq$  “ledger”, ...) by  $\text{Alice}$  when  $\text{State}_A = \text{INIT}$ :
- 21: store  $x$
- 22:  $\text{enabler}_A \leftarrow \text{hops}[0].\text{left}$
- 23: add  $\text{enabler}_A$  to  $\text{Alice}$ 's kindred parties
- 24:  $\text{State}_A \leftarrow \text{PENDING VIRTUAL OPEN}$
- 25: On output (FUNDED,  $\text{host}$ , ...) to  $\text{Alice}$  by  $\text{enabler}_A$  when  $\text{State}_A = \text{PENDING VIRTUAL OPEN}$ :
- 26:  $\text{host}_A \leftarrow \text{host}[0].\text{left}$
- 27:  $\text{State}_A \leftarrow \text{TENTATIVE VIRTUAL OPEN}$
- 28: On output (FUNDED,  $\text{host}$ , ...) to  $\text{Bob}$  by ITI  $R \in \{\mathcal{G}_{\text{Chan}}, \text{LN}\}$  when  $\text{State}_B = \text{INIT}$ :
- 29:  $\text{enabler}_B \leftarrow R$
- 30: add  $\text{enabler}_B$  to  $\text{Bob}$ 's kindred parties
- 31:  $\text{host}_B \leftarrow \text{host}$
- 32:  $\text{State}_B \leftarrow \text{TENTATIVE VIRTUAL OPEN}$
- 33: On (VIRTUAL OPEN) by  $\mathcal{A}$  when  $\text{State}_P = \text{TENTATIVE VIRTUAL OPEN}$ :
- 34: if  $P = \text{Alice}$  then  $\text{balance}_P \leftarrow x$

35:  $\text{layer}_P \leftarrow 0$   
 36:  $\text{State}_P \leftarrow \text{OPEN}$

Figure 17: State machine in Fig. 22, 23, 24 and 29

#### Functionality $\mathcal{G}_{\text{Chan}}$ – payment state machine

$P \in \{\text{Alice}, \text{Bob}\}$

- 1: On (PAY,  $x$ ) by  $P$  when  $\text{State}_P = \text{OPEN}$ : //  $P$  pays  $\bar{P}$
- 2: store  $x$
- 3:  $\text{State}_P \leftarrow \text{TENTATIVE PAY}$
- 4: On (PAY) by  $\mathcal{A}$  when  $\text{State}_P = \text{TENTATIVE PAY}$ : //  $P$  pays  $\bar{P}$
- 5:  $\text{State}_P \leftarrow (\text{SYNC PAY}, x)$
- 6: On (GET PAID,  $y$ ) by  $P$  when  $\text{State}_P = \text{OPEN}$ : //  $\bar{P}$  pays  $P$
- 7: store  $y$
- 8:  $\text{State}_P \leftarrow \text{TENTATIVE GET PAID}$
- 9: On (PAY) by  $\mathcal{A}$  when  $\text{State}_P = \text{TENTATIVE GET PAID}$ : //  $\bar{P}$  pays  $P$
- 10:  $\text{State}_P \leftarrow (\text{SYNC GET PAID}, x)$
- 11: When  $\text{State}_P = (\text{SYNC PAY}, x)$ :
- 12: if  $\text{State}_{\bar{P}} \in \{\text{IGNORED}, (\text{SYNC GET PAID}, x)\}$  then
- 13:  $\text{balance}_P \leftarrow \text{balance}_P - x$
- 14: // if  $\bar{P}$  honest, this state transition happens simultaneously with l. 21
- 15:  $\text{State}_P \leftarrow \text{OPEN}$
- 16: end if
- 17: When  $\text{State}_P = (\text{SYNC GET PAID}, x)$ :
- 18: if  $\text{State}_{\bar{P}} \in \{\text{IGNORED}, (\text{SYNC PAY}, x)\}$  then
- 19:  $\text{balance}_P \leftarrow \text{balance}_P + x$
- 20: // if  $\bar{P}$  honest, this state transition happens simultaneously with l. 15
- 21:  $\text{State}_P \leftarrow \text{OPEN}$
- 22: end if

Figure 18: State machine in Fig. 25

#### Functionality $\mathcal{G}_{\text{Chan}}$ – funding state machine

$P \in \{\text{Alice}, \text{Bob}\}$

- 1: On input (FUND ME,  $x$ , ...) by ITI  $R \in \{\mathcal{G}_{\text{Chan}}, \text{LN}\}$  when  $\text{State}_P = \text{OPEN}$ :
- 2: store  $x$
- 3: add  $R$  to  $P$ 's kindred parties
- 4:  $\text{State}_P \leftarrow \text{PENDING FUND}$
- 5: When  $\text{State}_P = \text{PENDING FUND}$ :
- 6: if we intercept the command “define new VIRT ITI  $\text{host}$ ” by  $\mathcal{A}$ , routed through  $P$  then



```

7:   store host
8:    $State_P \leftarrow$  TENTATIVE FUND
9:   continue executing  $\mathcal{A}$ 's command
10:  end if

11: On (FUND) by  $\mathcal{A}$  when  $State_P =$  TENTATIVE FUND:
12:    $State_P \leftarrow$  SYNC FUND

13: When  $State_P =$  OPEN:
14:   if we intercept the command "define new VIRT ITI
    host" by  $\mathcal{A}$ , routed through  $P$  then
15:     store host
16:      $State_P \leftarrow$  TENTATIVE HELP FUND
17:     continue executing  $\mathcal{A}$ 's command
18:   end if
19:   if we receive a RELAY message with msg = (INIT, ...,
    fundee) addressed from  $P$  by  $\mathcal{A}$  then
20:     add fundee to  $P$ 's kindred parties
21:     continue executing  $\mathcal{A}$ 's command
22:   end if

23: On (FUND) by  $\mathcal{A}$  when  $State_P =$  TENTATIVE HELP FUND:
24:    $State_P \leftarrow$  SYNC HELP FUND

25: When  $State_P =$  SYNC FUND:
26:   if  $State_{\bar{P}} \in \{\text{IGNORED, SYNC HELP FUND}\}$  then
27:      $balance_P \leftarrow balance_P - x$ 
28:      $host_P \leftarrow$  host
29:     // if  $\bar{P}$  honest, this state transition happens
    simultaneously with l. 38
30:      $layer_P \leftarrow layer_P + 1$ 
31:      $State_P \leftarrow$  OPEN
32:   end if

33: When  $State_P =$  SYNC HELP FUND:
34:   if  $State_{\bar{P}} \in \{\text{IGNORED, SYNC FUND}\}$  then
35:      $host_P \leftarrow$  host
36:     // if  $\bar{P}$  honest, this state transition happens
    simultaneously with l. 31
37:      $layer_P \leftarrow layer_P + 1$ 
38:      $State_P \leftarrow$  OPEN
39:   end if

```

Figure 19: State machine in Fig. 26

**Functionality  $\mathcal{G}_{\text{Chan}}$  – force close state machine**

$P \in \{\text{Alice, Bob}\}$

```

1: On (FORCECLOSE) by  $P$  when  $State_P =$  OPEN:
2:    $State_P \leftarrow$  CLOSING

3: On input (BALANCE) by  $R$  addressed to  $P$  where  $R$  is
   kindred with  $P$ :
4:   if  $State_P \notin \{\text{UNINIT, INIT, PENDING VIRTUAL OPEN,}$ 
    TENTATIVE VIRTUAL OPEN, TENTATIVE BASE OPEN,
    IGNORED, CLOSED $\}$  then
5:     reply (MY BALANCE,  $balance_P$ ,  $pk_P$ ,  $balance_{\bar{P}}$ ,
     $pk_{\bar{P}}$ )
6:   else
7:     reply (MY BALANCE, 0,  $pk_P$ , 0,  $pk_{\bar{P}}$ )

```

```

8:   end if

9: On (FORCECLOSE,  $P$ ) by  $\mathcal{A}$  when  $State_P \notin \{\text{UNINIT, INIT,}$ 
    PENDING VIRTUAL OPEN, TENTATIVE VIRTUAL OPEN,
    TENTATIVE BASE OPEN, IGNORED $\}$ :
10:  input (READ) to  $\mathcal{G}_{\text{Ledger}}$  as  $P$  and assign output to  $\Sigma$ 
11:  coins  $\leftarrow$  sum of values of outputs exclusively
    spendable or spent by  $pk_P$  in  $\Sigma$ 
12:   $balance \leftarrow balance_P$ 
13:  for all  $P$ 's kindred parties  $R$  do
14:    input (BALANCE) to  $R$  as  $P$  and extract  $balance_R$ ,
     $pk_R$  from response
15:     $balance \leftarrow balance + balance_R$ 
16:    coins  $\leftarrow$  coins + sum of values of outputs
    exclusively spendable or spent by  $pk_R$  in  $\Sigma$ 
17:  end for
18:  if coins  $\geq$  balance then
19:     $State_P \leftarrow$  CLOSED
20:  else // balance security is broken
21:    halt
22:  end if

```

Figure 20

**Functionality  $\mathcal{G}_{\text{Chan}}$  – cooperative close state machine**

$P \in \{\text{Alice, Bob}\}$

```

1: On (COOP CLOSING,  $P$ ,  $x$ ) by  $\mathcal{A}$  when  $State_P =$  OPEN:
2:   store  $x$ 
3:    $State_P \leftarrow$  COOP CLOSING

4: On (COOP CLOSED,  $P$ ) by  $\mathcal{A}$  when
    $State_P =$  COOP CLOSING:
5:   if  $layer_P = 0$  then //  $P$ 's channel, which is virtual, is
    cooperatively closed
6:      $State_P \leftarrow$  COOP CLOSED
7:   else // the virtual channel for which  $P$ 's channel is base
    is cooperatively closed
8:      $layer_P \leftarrow layer_P - 1$ 
9:      $balance_P \leftarrow balance_P + x$ 
10:     $State_P \leftarrow$  OPEN
11:  end if

```

Figure 21

## APPENDIX E MODEL & CONSTRUCTION

### A. Model

In this section we will examine the architecture and the details of our model, along with possible attacks and their mitigations. We follow the UCGS framework [7] to formulate the protocol and its security. We list the ideal-world global functionality  $\mathcal{G}_{\text{Chan}}$  in Section D (Figures 16-20) and a simulator  $\mathcal{S}$  (Figures 30-31), along with a real-world protocol  $\Pi_{\text{Chan}}$  (Figures 32-72) that UC-realizes  $\mathcal{G}_{\text{Chan}}$  (Theorem 5). We give

a self-contained description in this section, while pointing to figures in Sections D and F, in case the reader is interested in a pseudocode style specification.

As in previous formulations, (e.g., [34]), the role of  $\mathcal{E}$  corresponds to two distinct actors in a real world implementation. On the one hand  $\mathcal{E}$  passes inputs that correspond to the desires of human users (e.g. open a channel, pay, close), on the other hand  $\mathcal{E}$  is responsible with periodically waking up parties to check the ledger and act upon any detected counterparty misbehaviour, similar to an always-on “daemon” of real-life software that periodically nudges the implementation to perform these checks.

Since it is possible that  $\mathcal{E}$  fails to wake up a party often enough,  $\Pi_{\text{Chan}}$  explicitly checks whether it has become “negligent” every time it is activated and all security guarantees are conditioned on the party not being negligent. A party is deemed negligent if more than  $p$  blocks have been added to  $\mathcal{G}_{\text{Ledger}}$  between any consecutive pair of activations. The need for explicit negligence checking stems from the fact that party activation is entirely controlled by  $\mathcal{E}$  and no synchrony limitations are imposed (e.g. via the use of  $\mathcal{G}_{\text{LOCK}}$ ), therefore it can happen that an otherwise honest party is not activated in time to prevent a malicious counterparty from successfully using an old commitment transaction. If a party is marked as negligent, no balance security guarantees are given (c.f. Lemma 1). Note that in realistic software the aforementioned daemon is local and trustworthy, therefore it would never allow  $\Pi_{\text{Chan}}$  to become negligent, as long as the machine is powered on and in good order.

### B. Ideal world functionality $\mathcal{G}_{\text{Chan}}$

Our ideal world functionality  $\mathcal{G}_{\text{Chan}}$  represents a single channel, either simple or virtual. It acts as a relay between  $\mathcal{A}$  and  $\mathcal{E}$ , leaking all messages. This simplifies the functionality and facilitates the indistinguishability argument by having  $\mathcal{S}$  simply running internally the real world protocols of the channel parties  $\Pi_{\text{Chan}}$  with no modifications. Furthermore, the communication of parties with  $\mathcal{G}_{\text{Ledger}}$  is handled by  $\mathcal{G}_{\text{Chan}}$ : when a simulated honest party in  $\mathcal{S}$  needs to send a message to  $\mathcal{G}_{\text{Ledger}}$ ,  $\mathcal{S}$  instructs  $\mathcal{G}_{\text{Chan}}$  to send this message to  $\mathcal{G}_{\text{Ledger}}$  on this party’s behalf.  $\mathcal{G}_{\text{Chan}}$  internally maintains two state machines, one per channel party (c.f. Figures 22, 23, 24, 26, 25, 27, 29) that keep track of whether the parties are corrupted or negligent, whether the channel has opened, whether a payment is underway, which ITIs are to be considered *kindred* parties (as they correspond to other channels owned by the same human user, discussed below) and whether the channel is currently closing collaboratively or has already closed. The single security check performed is *whether the on-chain coins are at least equal to the expected balance once the channel closes*. If this check fails,  $\mathcal{G}_{\text{Chan}}$  halts. Since the protocol  $\Pi_{\text{Chan}}$  (which realises  $\mathcal{G}_{\text{Chan}}$ , c.f. Theorems 4 and 5) never halts, this ideal world check corresponds to the security guarantee offered by  $\Pi_{\text{Chan}}$ . Note that this check is not performed for negligent parties, as  $\mathcal{S}$  notifies  $\mathcal{G}_{\text{Chan}}$  if a party becomes negligent and the latter omits the check. Thus indistinguishability between the real and the ideal world is not violated in case of negligence.

Observe that a human user may participate in various channels, therefore it corresponds to more than one ITMs. This

is the case for example for the funder of a virtual channel and the corresponding party of the first base channel. Such parties are called *kindred*. They communicate locally (i.e., via inputs and outputs, without using the adversarially controlled network) and balance guarantees concern their aggregate coins. Formally this communication is modelled by having a virtual channel using its base channels as global subroutines, as defined in [7].

If we were using plain UC, the above would constitute a violation of the subroutine respecting property that functionalities have to fulfill. We leverage the concept of global functionalities put forth in [7] to circumvent the issue. More specifically, we say that a simple channel functionality is of “level” 1, which is written as  $\mathcal{G}_{\text{Chan}}^1$ . Inductively, a virtual channel functionality that is based on channels of any “level” up to and including  $n - 1$  has a “level”  $n$ , which write as  $\mathcal{G}_{\text{Chan}}^n$ . Then  $\mathcal{G}_{\text{Chan}}^n$  is  $(\mathcal{G}_{\text{Ledger}}, \mathcal{G}_{\text{Chan}}^1, \dots, \mathcal{G}_{\text{Chan}}^{n-1})$ -subroutine respecting, according to the definition of [7]. The same structure is used in the real world between protocols. This technique ensures that the necessary conditions for the validity of the functionality and the protocol are met and that the realisability proof can go through, as we will see in Section V in more detail.

We could instead contain all the channels in a single, monolithic functionality (following the approach of [34]) and we believe that we could still carry out the security proof. Nevertheless, having the functionality correspond to a single channel has no drawbacks, as all desired security guarantees are provided by our modular architecture, and instead brings two benefits. Firstly, the functionality is easier to intuitively grasp, as it handles less tasks. Having a simple and intuitive functionality aids in its reusability and is an informal goal of the simulation-based paradigm. Secondly, this approach permits our functionality to be global, as defined in [7]. We note that the ideal functionality defined in [2] is unsuitable for our case, as it requires direct access to the ledger, which is not the case for a  $\mathcal{G}_{\text{Chan}}$  corresponding to a virtual channel.

### C. Real world protocol $\Pi_{\text{Chan}}$

Our real world protocol  $\Pi_{\text{Chan}}$ , ran by party  $P$ , consists of two subprotocols: the Lightning-inspired part, dubbed LN (Figures 32-51) and the novel virtual layer subprotocol, named VIRT (Figures 57-72). A simple channel that is not the base of any virtual channel leverages only LN, whereas a simple channel that is the base of at least one virtual channel does leverage both LN and VIRT. A virtual channel uses both LN and VIRT.

**a) LN subprotocol:** The LN subprotocol has two variations depending on whether  $P$  is the channel funder (*Alice*) or the fundee (*Bob*). It performs a number of tasks: Initialisation takes a single step for fundees and two steps for funders. LN first receives a public key  $pk_{P,\text{out}}$  from  $\mathcal{E}$ . This is the public key that should eventually own all  $P$ ’s coins after the channel is closed. LN also initialises its internal variables. If  $P$  is a funder, LN waits for a second activation to generate a keypair and then waits for  $\mathcal{E}$  to endow it with some coins, which will be subsequently used to open the channel (Figure 32).

After initialisation, the funder *Alice* is ready to open the channel. Once  $\mathcal{E}$  gives to *Alice* the identity of *Bob*, the initial

channel balance  $c$  and, (looking forward to the VIRT subprotocol description) in case it is a virtual channel, the identities of the base channel owners (Figure 39), *Alice* generates and sends *Bob* her funding and revocation public keys ( $pk_{A,F}$ ,  $pk_{A,R}$ , used for the funding and revocation outputs respectively) along with  $c$ ,  $pk_{A,out}$ , and the base channel identities (only for virtual channels). Given that *Bob* has been initialised, it generates funding and revocation keys and replies to *Alice* with  $pk_{B,F}$ ,  $pk_{B,R}$ , and  $pk_{B,out}$  (Figure 34).

The next step prepares the base channels (Figure 35) if needed. If our channel is a simple one, then *Alice* simply generates the funding tx. If it is a virtual and assuming all base parties (running LN) cooperate, a chain of messages from *Alice* to *Bob* and back via all base parties is initiated (Figures 41 and 42). These messages let each successive neighbour know the identities of all the base parties. Furthermore each party instantiates a new “host” party that runs VIRT. It also generates new funding keys and communicates them, along with its “out” key  $pk_{P,out}$  and its leftward and rightward balances. If this circuit of messages completes, *Alice* delegates the creation of the new virtual layer transactions to its new VIRT host, which will be discussed later in detail. If the virtual layer is successful, each base party is informed by its host accordingly, intermediaries return to the OPEN state (i.e., they have completed their part and are in standby, ready to accept instructions for, e.g., new payments) and *Alice* and *Bob* continue the opening procedure. In particular, *Alice* and *Bob* exchange signatures on the initial commitment transactions, therefore ensuring that the funding output can be spent (Figure 36). After that, in case the channel is simple the funding transaction is put on-chain (Figure 37) and finally  $\mathcal{E}$  is informed of the successful channel opening.

There are two facts that should be noted: Firstly, in case the opened channel is virtual, each intermediary necessarily partakes in two channels. However each protocol instance only represents a party in a single channel, therefore each intermediary is in practice realised by two kindred  $\Pi_{\text{Chan}}$  instances that communicate locally, called “siblings”. Secondly, our protocol is not designed to gracefully recover if other parties do not send an expected message at any point in the opening or payment procedure. Such anti-Denial-of-Service measures would greatly complicate the protocol and are left as a task for a real world implementation. It should however be stressed that an honest party with an open channel that has fallen victim to such an attack can still unilaterally close the channel, therefore no coins are lost in any case.

Once the channel is open, *Alice* and *Bob* can carry out an unlimited number of payments in either direction, only needing to exchange 3 direct network messages with each other per payment, therefore avoiding the slow and costly on-chain validation. The payment procedure is identical for simple and virtual channels and crucially it does not implicate the intermediaries (and therefore *Alice* and *Bob* do not incur any delays such an interaction with intermediaries would introduce). For a payment to be carried out, the payee is first notified by  $\mathcal{E}$  (Figure 46) and subsequently the payer is instructed by  $\mathcal{E}$  to commence the payment (Figure 45).

If the channel is virtual, each party also checks that its upcoming balance is lower than the balance of its sibling’s counterparty and that the upcoming balance of the counterparty

is higher than the balance of its own sibling, otherwise it rejects the payment. This is to mitigate a “griefing” attack (i.e., one that does not lead to financial gain) where a malicious counterparty uses an old commitment transaction to spend the base funding output, therefore blocking the honest party from using its initiator virtual transaction. This check ensures that the coins gained by the punishment are sufficient to cover the losses from the blocked initiator transaction. If the attack takes place, other local channels based directly or indirectly on it are informed and are moved to a failed state. Note that this does not bring a risk of losing any of the total coins of all local channels. We conjecture that this balance constraint can be lifted if the current Lightning-inspired payment method is replaced with an eltoo-inspired one [17].

Subsequently each of the two parties builds the new commitment transaction of its counterparty and signs it. It also generates a new revocation keypair for the next update and sends over the generated signature and public key. Then the revocation transactions for the previously valid commitment transactions are generated, signed and the signatures are exchanged. To reduce the number of messages, the payee sends the two signatures and the public key in one message. This does not put it at risk of losing funds, since the new commitment transaction (for which it has already received a signature and therefore can spend) gives it more funds than the previous one.

$\Pi_{\text{Chan}}$  also checks the chain for outdated commitment transactions by the counterparty and publishes the corresponding revocation transaction in case one is found (Figure 48). It also keeps track of whether the party is activated often enough and marks it as negligent otherwise (Figure 32). In particular, at the beginning of every activation while the channel is open, LN checks if the party has been activated within the last  $p$  blocks (where  $p$  is an implementation-dependent global constant) by reading from  $\mathcal{G}_{\text{Ledger}}$  and comparing the current block height with that of the last activation.

Cooperative closing involves both LN (Figures 52-55) and VIRT (Figure 71) subprotocols. Any party can initiate it by asking the virtual channel fundee. The latter signs the last coin balance and sends it to the funder, who first ensures the fundee signed the correct balance, then signs it as well. Its enabler (i.e., the kindred party that is a member of the 1st base channel) generates and signs a new commitment tx in which it adds the funder’s coins to its own and the fundee’s coins to its counterparty’s, while using the funding keys that were used before opening the virtual channel. It also generates a new revocation keypair for the next channel update and sends the revocation public key with the signature and the final virtual channel balance to its counterparty. The latter verifies the signature and that the two virtual channel parties agree on their final balance. If all goes well, it passes control to its kindred party that is a member of the next channel in sequence. If no verification fails, the process repeats until the fundee is reached. Now a backwards sequence of messages begins, in which each party that previously did verification now provides a signature for the new commitment tx, along with a revocation signature for the old commitment tx and a new revocation public key for the next update. Each receiver verifies the signatures and “passes the baton” to its kindred party closer to the funder. When the funder is reached, the last

series of messages begins. Now each party that has not yet sent a revocation does so. Once the chain of messages reaches the fundee, the channel has successfully closed cooperatively. In total, each LN party sends and stores 2 signatures, 1 private key and 1 public key. The associated behaviour of the VIRT subprotocol is discussed later.

Alternatively, when either party is instructed by  $\mathcal{E}$  to unilaterally close the channel (Figure 50), it first asks its host to unilaterally close (details on the exact steps are discussed later) and once that is done, the ledger is checked for any transaction spending the funding output. In case the latest remote commitment tx is on-chain, then the channel is already closed and no further action is necessary. If an old commitment transaction is on-chain, the corresponding revocation transaction is used for punishment. If the funding output is still unspent, the party attempts to publish the latest commitment transaction after waiting for any relevant timelock to expire. Until the funding output is irrevocably spent, the party still has to periodically check the blockchain and again be ready to use a revocation transaction if an old commitment transaction spends the funding output after all (Figure 48).

**b) VIRT subprotocol:** This subprotocol acts as a mediator between the base channels and the Lightning-based logic. Put simply, its main responsibility is putting on-chain the funding output of the channel when needed. When first initialised by a machine that executes the LN subprotocol (Figure 57), it learns and stores the identities, keys, and balances of various relevant parties, along with the required timelock and other useful data regarding the base channels. It then generates a number of keys as needed for the rest of the base preparation. If the initialiser is also the channel funder, then the VIRT machine initiates 4 “circuits” of messages. Each circuit consists of one message from the funder  $P_1$  to its neighbour  $P_2$ , one message from each intermediary  $P_i$  to the “next” neighbour  $P_{i+1}$ , one message from the fundee  $P_n$  to its neighbour  $P_{n-1}$  and one more message from each intermediary  $P_i$  to the “previous” neighbour  $P_{i-1}$ , for a total of  $2 \cdot (n - 1)$  messages per circuit.

The first circuit (Figure 58) communicates all “out”, virtual, revocation and funding keys (both old and new), all balances and all timelocks among all parties. In the second circuit (Figure 65) every party receives and verifies all signatures for all inputs of its virtual and bridge transactions that spend a virtual output. It also produces and sends its own such signatures to the other parties. Each party generates and circulates  $S = 2(n - 2) + (i - 3)(n - i) + (i - 1)(n - i - 2) + \chi_{i=3}(2(n - i) - 1) + \chi_{i=n-2}(2i - 3) + 3 + \sum_{i=2}^{n-2} (n - 3 + \chi_{i=2} + \chi_{i=n-1} + 2(i - 2 + \chi_{i=2})(n - i - 1 + \chi_{i=n-1})) \in O(n^3)$  signatures (where  $\chi_A$  is the characteristic function that equals 1 if  $A$  is true and 0 else), which is derived by calculating the total number of bridge transactions and virtual outputs of all parties’ virtual transactions – we remind that each virtual output can be spent either by a  $n$ -of- $n$  multisig via a new virtual transaction, or by a 4-of-4 multisig via its bridge transaction. On a related note, the total number of virtual and bridge transactions for which each party needs to store signatures is 2 for the two endpoints (Figure 60) and  $2(n - 2 + \chi_{i=2} + \chi_{i=n-1} + (i - 2 + \chi_{i=2})(n - i - 1 + \chi_{i=n-1})) \in O(n^2)$  for the  $i$ -th intermediary (Figure 59). The latter is derived by counting the number

of extend-interval and merge-intervals transactions held by the intermediary, which are equal to the number of distinct intervals that the party can extend and the number of distinct pairs of intervals that the party can merge respectively, plus 1 for the unique initiator transaction of the party. The third circuit concerns sharing signatures for the funding outputs (Figure 66). Each party signs all transactions that spend a funding output relevant to the party, i.e., the initiator transaction and some of the extend-interval transactions of its neighbours. The two endpoints send 2 signatures each when  $n = 3$  and  $n - 2$  signatures each when  $n > 3$ , whereas each intermediary sends  $2 + \chi_{i+1 < n}(n - 2 + \chi_{i=n-2}) + \chi_{i-1 > 1}(n - 2 + \chi_{i=3}) \in O(n)$  signatures each. The last circuit of messages (Figure 67) carries the revocations of the previous states of all base channels. After this, base parties can only use the newly created virtual transactions to spend their funding outputs. In this step each party exchanges a single signature with each of its neighbours.

In case of a cooperative closing, VIRT orchestrates the hosted LN ITIs, instructing them to perform the actions discussed previously. It also is responsible for sending the actual messages to the host of the next counterparty and receiving its responses. Apart from controlling the flow of messages, a VIRT ITI also generates revocation signatures to invalidate its virtual and bridge transactions and verifies the respective revocation signatures generated by its counterparty VIRT ITI, thereby ensuring that, moving forward, the use of an old virtual or bridge transaction can be punished.

On the other hand, when VIRT is instructed to unilaterally close by party  $R$  (Figure 69), it first notifies its VIRT host (if any) and waits for it to unilaterally close. After that, it signs and publishes the unique valid virtual transaction. It then repeatedly checks the chain to see if the transaction is included (Figure 70). If it is included, the virtual layer is closed and VIRT informs (i.e., outputs (CLOSED) to)  $R$ . The instruction to close has to be received potentially many times, because a number of virtual transactions (the ones that spend the same output) are mutually exclusive and therefore if another base party publishes an incompatible virtual transaction contemporaneously and that remote transaction wins the race to the chain, then our VIRT party has to try again with another, compatible virtual transaction.

#### Simulator $\mathcal{S}$ – general message handling rules

- On receiving (RELAY, in\_msg,  $P$ ,  $R$ , in\_mode) by  $\mathcal{G}_{\text{Chan}}$  (in\_mode  $\in \{\text{input, output, network}\}$ ,  $P \in \{\text{Alice, Bob}\}$ ), handle (in\_msg) with the simulated party  $P$  as if it was received from  $R$  by means of in\_mode. In case simulated  $P$  does not exist yet, initialise it as an LN ITI. If there is a resulting message out\_msg that is to be sent by simulated  $P$  to  $R'$  by means of out\_mode  $\in \{\text{input, output, network}\}$ , send (RELAY, out\_msg,  $P$ ,  $R'$ , out\_mode) to  $\mathcal{G}_{\text{Chan}}$ .
- On receiving by  $\mathcal{G}_{\text{Chan}}$  a message to be sent by  $P$  to  $R$  via the network, carry on with this action (i.e., send this message via the internal  $\mathcal{A}$ ).
- Relay any other incoming message to the internal  $\mathcal{A}$  unmodified.
- On receiving a message (msg) by the internal  $\mathcal{A}$ , if it is addressed to one of the parties that correspond to  $\mathcal{G}_{\text{Chan}}$ ,



handle the message internally with the corresponding simulated party. Otherwise relay the message to its intended recipient unmodified. // Other recipients are  $\mathcal{E}$ ,  $\mathcal{G}_{\text{Ledger}}$  or parties unrelated to  $\mathcal{G}_{\text{Chan}}$

Given that  $\mathcal{G}_{\text{Chan}}$  relays all messages and that we simulate the real-world machines that correspond to  $\mathcal{G}_{\text{Chan}}$ , the simulation is perfectly indistinguishable from the real world.

Figure 30

#### Simulator $\mathcal{S}$ – notifications to $\mathcal{G}_{\text{Chan}}$

- “ $P$ ” refers one of the parties that correspond to  $\mathcal{G}_{\text{Chan}}$ .
  - When an action in this Figure interrupts an ITI simulation, continue simulating from the interruption location once action is over/ $\mathcal{G}_{\text{Chan}}$  hands control back.
- 1: On (CORRUPT) by  $\mathcal{A}$ , addressed to  $P$ :
  - 2: // After executing this code and getting control back from  $\mathcal{G}_{\text{Chan}}$  (which always happens, c.f. Fig. 16), deliver (CORRUPT) to simulated  $P$  (c.f. Fig. 30).
  - 3: send (INFO, BECAME CORRUPTED OR NEGLIGENT,  $P$ ) to  $\mathcal{G}_{\text{Chan}}$
  - 4: When simulated  $P$  sets variable `negligent` to `True` (Fig. 32, l. 7/Fig. 33, l. 26):
  - 5: send (INFO, BECAME CORRUPTED OR NEGLIGENT,  $P$ ) to  $\mathcal{G}_{\text{Chan}}$
  - 6: When simulated honest *Alice* receives (OPEN,  $x$ , hops, ...) by  $\mathcal{E}$ :
  - 7: store hops // will be used to inform  $\mathcal{G}_{\text{Chan}}$  once the channel is open
  - 8: When simulated honest *Bob* receives (OPEN,  $x$ , hops, ...) by *Alice*:
  - 9: if *Alice* is corrupted then store hops // if *Alice* is honest, we already have hops. If *Alice* became corrupted after receiving (OPEN, ...), overwrite hops
  - 10: When the last of the honest simulated  $\mathcal{G}_{\text{Chan}}$ ’s parties moves to the OPEN *State* for the first time (Fig. 36, l. 19/Fig. 38, l. 16/Fig. 39, l. 18):
  - 11: if hops = “ledger” then
  - 12: send (INFO, BASE OPEN) to  $\mathcal{G}_{\text{Chan}}$
  - 13: else
  - 14: send (INFO, VIRTUAL OPEN) to  $\mathcal{G}_{\text{Chan}}$
  - 15: end if
  - 16: When (both  $\mathcal{G}_{\text{Chan}}$ ’s simulated parties are honest and complete sending and receiving a payment (Fig. 44, ll. 6 and 21 respectively), or (when only one party is honest and (completes either receiving or sending a payment)): // also send this message if both parties are honest when Fig. 44, l. 6 is executed by one party, but its counterparty is corrupted before executing Fig. 44, l. 21
  - 17: send (INFO, PAY) to  $\mathcal{G}_{\text{Chan}}$
  - 18: When honest  $P$  executes Fig. 41, l. 21 or (when honest  $P$

executes Fig. 41, l. 19 and  $\bar{P}$  is corrupted): // in the first case if  $P$  is honest, it has already moved to the new host, (Fig 67, ll. 7, 23): lifting to next layer is done

- 19: send (INFO, FUND) to  $\mathcal{G}_{\text{Chan}}$
- 20: When one of the honest simulated  $\mathcal{G}_{\text{Chan}}$ ’s parties  $P$  moves to the COOP CLOSING state (Fig. 54, l. 4, Fig. 55, ll. 6, 12, Fig. 71, ll. 11, 24):
- 21: if triggered by Fig. 54, l. 4 or Fig. 55, l. 6 then //  $P$  is funder or fundee
- 22: send (INFO, COOP CLOSING,  $P$ ,  $-c_P$ ) to  $\mathcal{G}_{\text{Chan}}$  // coin value extracted from simulated  $P$
- 23: else if triggered by Fig. 55, l. 12 then //  $P$  is funder’s base
- 24: send (INFO, COOP CLOSING,  $P$ ,  $c'_1$ ) to  $\mathcal{G}_{\text{Chan}}$
- 25: else if triggered by Fig. 71, l. 11 then //  $P$  is an intermediary farther from funder than  $\bar{P}$
- 26: send (INFO, COOP CLOSING,  $P$ ,  $c'_2$ ) to  $\mathcal{G}_{\text{Chan}}$
- 27: else if triggered by Fig. 71, l. 24 then //  $P$  is an intermediary closer to funder than  $\bar{P}$
- 28: send (INFO, COOP CLOSING,  $P$ ,  $c'_1 - c_{\text{virt}}$ ) to  $\mathcal{G}_{\text{Chan}}$
- 29: end if
- 30: When one of the honest simulated  $\mathcal{G}_{\text{Chan}}$ ’s parties  $P$  completes cooperative closing (Fig. 55, l. 45, Fig. 71, l. 187, Fig. 71, l. 150, Fig. 71, or l. 134):
- 31: send (INFO, COOP CLOSED,  $P$ ) to  $\mathcal{G}_{\text{Chan}}$
- 32: When one of the honest simulated  $\mathcal{G}_{\text{Chan}}$ ’s parties  $P$  moves to the CLOSED state (Fig. 48, l. 8 or l. 11):
- 33: send (INFO, FORCECLOSE,  $P$ ) to  $\mathcal{G}_{\text{Chan}}$

Figure 31

#### APPENDIX F PROTOCOL

##### Process LN – init

- 1: // When not specified, input comes from and output goes to  $\mathcal{E}$ .
- 2: // The ITI knows whether it is *Alice* (funder) or *Bob* (fundee). The activated party is  $P$  and the counterparty is  $\bar{P}$ .
- 3: On every activation, before handling the message:
- 4: if `last_poll`  $\neq \perp \wedge$  `State`  $\neq$  CLOSED then // channel is open
- 5: input (READ) to  $\mathcal{G}_{\text{Ledger}}$  and assign output to  $\Sigma$
- 6: if `last_poll` +  $p < |\Sigma|$  then //  $p$  is a global parameter
- 7: negligent  $\leftarrow$  True
- 8: end if
- 9: end if
- 10: if `State` = WAITING FOR NOTHING REVOKED  $\wedge$  activation is not caused by output (NOTHING REVOKED), received by a member of the list of old hosts then // the only way for this case to be true is if the old host punished a misbehaving counterparty
- 11: `State`  $\leftarrow$  BASE PUNISHED

```

12:   end if

13: On (INIT,  $pk_{P,out}$ ):
14:   ensure  $State = \perp$ 
15:    $State \leftarrow \text{INIT}$ 
16:    $hosting \leftarrow \text{False}$ 
17:   store  $pk_{P,out}$ 
18:    $(c_A, c_B, locked_A, locked_B) \leftarrow (0, 0, 0, 0)$ 
19:    $(paid\_out, paid\_in) \leftarrow (\emptyset, \emptyset)$ 
20:    $negligent \leftarrow \text{False}$ 
21:    $last\_poll \leftarrow \perp$ 
22:   output (INIT OK)

23: On (TOP UP):
24:   ensure  $P = Alice$  // activated party is the funder
25:   ensure  $State = \text{INIT}$ 
26:    $(sk_{P,chain}, pk_{P,chain}) \leftarrow \text{KEYGEN}()$ 
27:   input (READ) to  $\mathcal{G}_{\text{Ledger}}$  and assign output to  $\Sigma$ 
28:   output (TOP UP TO,  $pk_{P,chain}$ )
29:   while
     $\neg \exists tx \in \Sigma, c_{P,chain} : (c_{P,chain}, pk_{P,chain}) \in tx.outputs$  do
30:     // while waiting, all other messages by  $P$  are ignored
31:     wait for input (CHECK TOP UP)
32:     input (READ) to  $\mathcal{G}_{\text{Ledger}}$  and assign output to  $\Sigma$ 
33:   end while
34:    $State \leftarrow \text{TOPPED UP}$ 
35:   output (TOP UP OK,  $c_{P,chain}$ )

36: On (BALANCE):
37:   ensure  $State \in \{\text{OPEN}, \text{CLOSED}\}$ 
38:   output (BALANCE,
     $c_A, pk_{A,out}, c_B, pk_{B,out}, locked_A, locked_B$ )

```

Figure 32

#### Process LN – methods used by VIRT

```

1: REVOKEPREVIOUS():
2:   ensure
     $State \in \text{WAITING FOR (OUTBOUND) REVOCATION}$ 
3:    $R_{\bar{P},i} \leftarrow \text{TX}$  {input:  $C_{P,i}.outputs.P$ , output:
     $(C_{P,i}.outputs.P.value, pk_{\bar{P},out})$ }
4:    $sig_{A,R,i} \leftarrow \text{SIGN}(R_{\bar{P},i}, sk_{P,R,i})$ 
5:   if  $State = \text{WAITING FOR REVOCATION}$  then
6:      $State \leftarrow \text{WAITING FOR INBOUND REVOCATION}$ 
7:   else //  $State = \text{WAITING FOR OUTBOUND REVOCATION}$ 
8:      $i \leftarrow i + 1$ 
9:      $State \leftarrow \text{WAITING FOR HOSTS READY}$ 
10:  end if
11:   $host_P \leftarrow host'_P$  // forget old host, use new host
    instead
12:   $layer \leftarrow layer + 1$ 
13:  return  $sig_{P,R,i}$ 

14: PROCESSREMOTEREVOCATION( $sig_{\bar{P},R,i}$ ):
15:   ensure  $State = \text{WAITING FOR (INBOUND) REVOCATION}$ 
16:    $R_{P,i} \leftarrow \text{TX}$  {input:  $C_{\bar{P},i}.outputs.\bar{P}$ , output:
     $(C_{\bar{P},i}.outputs.\bar{P}.value, pk_{P,out})$ }
17:   ensure  $\text{VERIFY}(R_{P,i}, sig_{\bar{P},R,i}, pk_{\bar{P},R,i}) = \text{True}$ 
18:   if  $State = \text{WAITING FOR REVOCATION}$  then

```

```

19:    $State \leftarrow \text{WAITING FOR OUTBOUND REVOCATION}$ 
20:   else //  $State = \text{WAITING FOR INBOUND REVOCATION}$ 
21:      $i \leftarrow i + 1$ 
22:      $State \leftarrow \text{WAITING FOR HOSTS READY}$ 
23:   end if
24:   return (OK)

25: NEGLIGENT():
26:    $negligent \leftarrow \text{True}$ 
27:   return (OK)

```

Figure 33

#### Process LN.EXCHANGEOPENKEYS()

```

1:  $(sk_{A,F}, pk_{A,F}), (sk_{A,R,1}, pk_{A,R,1}), (sk_{A,R,2}, pk_{A,R,2}) \leftarrow$ 
    $\text{KEYGEN}()$ 3
2:  $State \leftarrow \text{WAITING FOR OPENING KEYS}$ 
3: send (OPEN,  $c$ , hops,  $pk_{A,F}, pk_{A,R,1}, pk_{A,R,2}, pk_{A,out}$ ) to
   fundee
4: // colored code is run by honest fundee. Validation is
   implicit
5: ensure we run the code of Bob
6: ensure  $State = \text{INIT}$ 
7: store  $pk_{A,F}, pk_{A,R,1}, pk_{A,R,2}, pk_{A,out}$ 
8:  $(sk_{B,F}, pk_{B,F}), (sk_{B,R,1}, pk_{B,R,1}), (sk_{B,R,2}, pk_{B,R,2}) \leftarrow$ 
    $\text{KEYGEN}()$ 3
9: if hops = "ledger" then // opening base channel
10:   $layer \leftarrow 0$ 
11:   $t_P \leftarrow s + p$  //  $s$  is the upper bound of  $\eta$  from
    Lemma 7.19 of [9]
12:   $State \leftarrow \text{WAITING FOR COMM SIG}$ 
13: else // opening virtual channel
14:   $State \leftarrow \text{WAITING FOR CHECK KEYS}$ 
15: end if
16: reply (ACCEPT CHANNEL,  $pk_{B,F}, pk_{B,R,1}, pk_{B,R,2},$ 
    $pk_{B,out}$ )
17: ensure  $State = \text{WAITING FOR OPENING KEYS}$ 
18: store  $pk_{B,F}, pk_{B,R,1}, pk_{B,R,2}, pk_{B,out}$ 
19:  $State \leftarrow \text{OPENING KEYS OK}$ 

```

Figure 34

#### Process LN.PREPAREBASE()

```

1: if hops = "ledger" then // opening base channel
2:   $F \leftarrow \text{TX}$  {input:  $(c, pk_{A,chain})$ , output:
     $(c, 2/\{pk_{A,F}, pk_{B,F}\})$ }
3:   $host_P \leftarrow \text{"ledger"}$ 
4:   $layer \leftarrow 0$ 
5:   $t_P \leftarrow s + p$ 
6: else // opening virtual channel
7:  input (FUND ME,  $Bob$ , hops,  $c, pk_{A,F}, pk_{B,F}$ ) to
    hops[0].left and expect output (FUNDED,  $host_P$ ,
    funder_layer,  $t_P$ ) // ignore any other message
8:   $layer \leftarrow \text{funder\_layer}$ 
9: end if

```

Figure 35

**Process LN.EXCHANGEOPENSIGS()**

```

1: //  $s = (2 + q) \text{windowSize}$ , where  $q$  and  $\text{windowSize}$ 
   are defined in Proposition 6
2:  $C_{A,0} \leftarrow \text{TX}$  {input:  $(c, 2/\{pk_{A,F}, pk_{B,F}\})$ , outputs:  $(c,$ 
    $pk_{A,\text{out}} + (p + s)) \vee 2/\{pk_{A,R,1}, pk_{B,R,1}\})$ ,  $(0, pk_{B,\text{out}})\}$ 
3:  $C_{B,0} \leftarrow \text{TX}$  {input:  $(c, 2/\{pk_{A,F}, pk_{B,F}\})$ , outputs:  $(c,$ 
    $pk_{A,\text{out}})$ ,  $(0, (pk_{B,\text{out}} + (p + s)) \vee 2/\{pk_{A,R,1}, pk_{B,R,1}\})\}$ 
4:  $\text{sig}_{A,C,0} \leftarrow \text{SIGN}(C_{B,0}, sk_{A,F})$ 
5:  $\text{State} \leftarrow \text{WAITING FOR COMM SIG}$ 
6: send (FUNDING CREATED,  $(c, pk_{A,\text{chain}})$ ,  $\text{sig}_{A,C,0}$ ) to
   fundee
7: ensure  $\text{State} = \text{WAITING FOR COMM SIG}$  // if opening virtual
   channel, we have received (FUNDED,  $\text{host\_fundee}$ ) by
   hops[-1].right (Fig 38, l. 3)
8: if hops = "ledger" then // opening base channel
9:    $F \leftarrow \text{TX}$  {input:  $(c, pk_{A,\text{chain}})$ , output:
    $(c, 2/\{pk_{A,F}, pk_{B,F}\})$ }
10: end if
11:  $C_{B,0} \leftarrow \text{TX}$  {input:  $(c, 2/\{pk_{A,F}, pk_{B,F}\})$ , outputs:  $(c,$ 
    $pk_{A,\text{out}})$ ,  $(0, (pk_{B,\text{out}} + (p + s)) \vee 2/\{pk_{A,R,1}, pk_{B,R,1}\})\}$ 
12: ensure  $\text{VERIFY}(C_{B,0}, \text{sig}_{A,C,0}, pk_{A,F}) = \text{True}$ 
13:  $C_{A,0} \leftarrow \text{TX}$  {input:  $(c, 2/\{pk_{A,F}, pk_{B,F}\})$ , outputs:  $(c,$ 
    $pk_{A,\text{out}} + (p + s)) \vee 2/\{pk_{A,R,1}, pk_{B,R,1}\})$ ,  $(0, pk_{B,\text{out}})\}$ 
14:  $\text{sig}_{B,C,0} \leftarrow \text{SIGN}(C_{A,0}, sk_{B,F})$ 
15: if hops = "ledger" then // opening base channel
16:    $\text{State} \leftarrow \text{WAITING TO CHECK FUNDING}$ 
17: else // opening virtual channel
18:    $c_A \leftarrow c$ ;  $c_B \leftarrow 0$ ;  $i \leftarrow 0$ 
19:    $\text{State} \leftarrow \text{OPEN}$ 
20: end if
21: reply (FUNDING SIGNED,  $\text{sig}_{B,C,0}$ )
22: ensure  $\text{State} = \text{WAITING FOR COMM SIG}$ 
23: ensure  $\text{VERIFY}(C_{A,0}, \text{sig}_{B,C,0}, pk_{B,F}) = \text{True}$ 

```

Figure 36

**Process LN.COMMITBASE()**

```

1:  $\text{sig}_F \leftarrow \text{SIGN}(F, sk_{A,\text{chain}})$ 
2: input (SUBMIT,  $(F, \text{sig}_F)$ ) to  $\mathcal{G}_{\text{Ledger}}$  // enter "while" below
   before sending
3: while  $F \notin \Sigma$  do
4:   wait for input (CHECK FUNDING) // ignore all other
   messages
5:   input (READ) to  $\mathcal{G}_{\text{Ledger}}$  and assign output to  $\Sigma$ 
6: end while

```

Figure 37

**Process LN – external open messages for Bob**

```

1: On output (FUNDED,  $\text{host}_P$ ,  $\text{funder\_layer}$ ,  $t_P$ ) by
   hops[-1].right:
2:   ensure  $\text{State} = \text{WAITING FOR FUNDED}$ 
3:   store  $\text{host}_P$  // we will talk directly to  $\text{host}_P$ 
4:    $\text{layer} \leftarrow \text{funder\_layer}$ 
5:    $\text{State} \leftarrow \text{WAITING FOR COMM SIG}$ 
6:   reply (FUND ACK)

7: On output (CHECK KEYS,  $(pk_1, pk_2)$ ) by hops[-1].right:
8:   ensure  $\text{State} = \text{WAITING FOR CHECK KEYS}$ 
9:   ensure  $pk_1 = pk_{A,F} \wedge pk_2 = pk_{B,F}$ 
10:   $\text{State} \leftarrow \text{WAITING FOR FUNDED}$ 
11:  reply (KEYS OK)

12: On input (CHECK FUNDING):
13:  ensure  $\text{State} = \text{WAITING TO CHECK FUNDING}$ 
14:  input (READ) to  $\mathcal{G}_{\text{Ledger}}$  and assign output to  $\Sigma$ 
15:  if  $F \in \Sigma$  then
16:     $\text{State} \leftarrow \text{OPEN}$ 
17:    reply (OPEN OK)
18:  end if

```

Figure 38

**Process LN – On (OPEN,  $c$ , hops, fundee):**

```

1: // fundee is Bob
2: ensure we run the code of Alice // activated party is the
   funder
3: if hops = "ledger" then // opening base channel
4:   ensure  $\text{State} = \text{TOPPED UP}$ 
5:   ensure  $c = c_{A,\text{chain}}$ 
6: else // opening virtual channel
7:   ensure  $\text{len}(\text{hops}) \geq 2$  // cannot open a virtual over 1
   channel
8: end if
9: LN.EXCHANGEOPENKEYS()
10: LN.PREPAREBASE()
11: LN.EXCHANGEOPENSIGS()
12: if hops = "ledger" then
13:   LN.COMMITBASE()
14: end if
15: input (READ) to  $\mathcal{G}_{\text{Ledger}}$  and assign output to  $\Sigma$ 
16:  $\text{last\_poll} \leftarrow |\Sigma|$ 
17:  $c_A \leftarrow c$ ;  $c_B \leftarrow 0$ ;  $i \leftarrow 0$ 
18:  $\text{State} \leftarrow \text{OPEN}$ 
19: output (OPEN OK,  $c$ , fundee, hops)

```

Figure 39

**Process LN.UPDATEFORVIRTUAL()**

```

1:  $C_{\bar{P},i+1} \leftarrow C_{\bar{P},i}$  with  $pk'_{P,F}$ ,  $pk'_{\bar{P},F}$ ,  $pk_{\bar{P},R,i+1}$  and
    $pk_{P,R,i+1}$  instead of  $pk_{P,F}$ ,  $pk_{\bar{P},F}$ ,  $pk_{\bar{P},R,i}$  and  $pk_{P,R,i}$ 
   respectively, reducing the input and  $P$ 's output by  $c_{\text{virt}}$ 

```

```

2:  $\text{sig}_{P,C,i+1} \leftarrow \text{SIGN}(C_{\bar{P},i+1})$  // kept by  $\bar{P}$ 
3:  $(sk_{P,R,i+2}, pk_{P,R,i+2}) \leftarrow \text{KEYGEN}()$ 
4: send (UPDATE FORWARD,  $\text{sig}_{P,C,i+1}$ ,  $pk_{P,R,i+2}$ ) to  $\bar{P}$ 
5: //  $P$  refers to payer and  $\bar{P}$  to payee both in local and remote code
6:  $C_{\bar{P},i+1} \leftarrow C_{\bar{P},i}$  with  $pk'_{P,F}$ ,  $pk'_{\bar{P},F}$ ,  $pk_{P,R,i+1}$  and  $pk_{\bar{P},R,i+1}$  instead of  $pk_{P,F}$ ,  $pk_{\bar{P},F}$ ,  $pk_{P,R,i}$  and  $pk_{\bar{P},R,i}$  respectively, reducing the input and  $P$ 's output by  $c_{\text{virt}}$ 
7: ensure  $\text{VERIFY}(C_{\bar{P},i+1}, \text{sig}_{P,C,i+1}, pk'_{P,F}) = \text{True}$ 
8:  $C_{P,i+1} \leftarrow C_{P,i}$  with  $pk'_{\bar{P},F}$ ,  $pk'_{P,F}$ ,  $pk_{\bar{P},R,i+1}$  and  $pk_{P,R,i+1}$  instead of  $pk_{\bar{P},F}$ ,  $pk_{P,F}$ ,  $pk_{\bar{P},R,i}$  and  $pk_{P,R,i}$  respectively, reducing the input and  $P$ 's output by  $c_{\text{virt}}$ 
9:  $\text{sig}_{\bar{P},C,i+1} \leftarrow \text{SIGN}(C_{P,i+1}, sk'_{\bar{P},F})$  // kept by  $P$ 
10:  $(sk_{\bar{P},R,i+2}, pk_{\bar{P},R,i+2}) \leftarrow \text{KEYGEN}()$ 
11: reply (UPDATE BACK,  $\text{sig}_{\bar{P},C,i+1}$ ,  $pk_{\bar{P},R,i+2}$ )
12:  $C_{P,i+1} \leftarrow C_{P,i}$  with  $pk'_{\bar{P},F}$ ,  $pk'_{P,F}$ ,  $pk_{\bar{P},R,i+1}$  and  $pk_{P,R,i+1}$  instead of  $pk_{\bar{P},F}$ ,  $pk_{P,F}$ ,  $pk_{\bar{P},R,i}$  and  $pk_{P,R,i}$  respectively, reducing the input and  $P$ 's output by  $c_{\text{virt}}$ 
13: ensure  $\text{VERIFY}(C_{P,i+1}, \text{sig}_{\bar{P},C,i+1}, pk'_{\bar{P},F}) = \text{True}$ 

```

Figure 40

#### Process LN – virtualise start and end

```

1: On input (FUND ME, fundee, hops,  $c_{\text{virt}}$ ,  $pk_{A,V}$ ,  $pk_{B,V}$ ) by funder:
2: ensure  $\text{State} = \text{OPEN}$ 
3: ensure  $c_P - \text{locked}_P \geq c_{\text{virt}}$ 
4:  $\text{State} \leftarrow \text{VIRTUALISING}$ 
5:  $(sk'_{P,F}, pk'_{P,F}) \leftarrow \text{KEYGEN}()$ 
6: define new VIRT ITI  $\text{host}'_P$ 
7: send (VIRTUALISING,  $\text{host}'_P$ ,  $pk'_{P,F}$ , hops, fundee,  $c_{\text{virt}}$ , 2,  $\text{len}(\text{hops})$ ) to  $\bar{P}$  and expect reply (VIRTUALISING ACK,  $\text{host}'_{\bar{P}}$ ,  $pk'_{\bar{P},F}$ )
8: ensure  $pk'_{\bar{P},F}$  is different from  $pk_{\bar{P},F}$  and all older  $\bar{P}$ 's funding public keys
9: LN.UPDATEFORVIRTUAL()
10:  $\text{State} \leftarrow \text{WAITING FOR REVOCATION}$ 
11: input (HOST ME, funder, fundee,  $\text{host}'_{\bar{P}}$ ,  $\text{host}_P$ ,  $c_P$ ,  $c_{\bar{P}}$ ,  $c_{\text{virt}}$ ,  $pk_{A,V}$ ,  $pk_{B,V}$ ,  $(sk'_{P,F}, pk'_{P,F})$ ,  $(sk_{P,F}, pk_{P,F})$ ,  $pk_{\bar{P},F}$ ,  $pk'_{\bar{P},F}$ ,  $pk_{P,\text{out}}$ ,  $\text{len}(\text{hops})$ ) to  $\text{host}'_P$ 
12: On output (HOSTS READY,  $t_P$ ) by  $\text{host}_P$ : //  $\text{host}_P$  is the new host, renamed in Fig. 33, l. 12
13: ensure  $\text{State} = \text{WAITING FOR HOSTS READY}$ 
14:  $\text{State} \leftarrow \text{OPEN}$ 
15:  $\text{hosting} \leftarrow \text{True}$ 
16: move  $sk_{P,F}$ ,  $pk_{P,F}$ ,  $pk_{\bar{P},F}$  to list of old funding keys
17:  $(sk_{P,F}, pk_{P,F}) \leftarrow (sk'_{P,F}, pk'_{P,F})$ ;  $pk_{\bar{P},F} \leftarrow pk'_{\bar{P},F}$ 
18: if  $\text{len}(\text{hops}) = 1$  then // we are the last hop
19: output (FUNDED,  $\text{host}_P$ , layer,  $t_P$ ) to fundee and expect reply (FUND ACK)
20: else if we have received input FUND ME just before we moved to the VIRTUALISING state then // we are the first hop
21:  $c_P \leftarrow c_P - c_{\text{virt}}$ 
22: output (FUNDED,  $\text{host}_P$ , layer,  $t_P$ ) to funder // do not expect reply by funder
23: end if
24: reply (HOST ACK)

```

Figure 41

#### Process LN – virtualise hops

```

1: On (VIRTUALISING,  $\text{host}'_{\bar{P}}$ ,  $pk'_{\bar{P},F}$ , hops, fundee,  $c_{\text{virt}}$ ,  $i$ ,  $n$ ) by  $\bar{P}$ :
2: ensure  $\text{State} = \text{OPEN}$ 
3: ensure  $c_{\bar{P}} - \text{locked}_{\bar{P}} \geq c_{\text{virt}}$ ;  $1 \leq i \leq n$ 
4: ensure  $pk'_{\bar{P},F}$  is different from  $pk_{\bar{P},F}$  and all older  $\bar{P}$ 's funding public keys
5:  $\text{State} \leftarrow \text{VIRTUALISING}$ 
6:  $\text{locked}_{\bar{P}} \leftarrow \text{locked}_{\bar{P}} + c_{\text{virt}}$  // if  $\bar{P}$  is hosting the funder,  $\bar{P}$  will transfer  $c_{\text{virt}}$  coins instead of locking them, but the end result is the same
7:  $(sk'_{P,F}, pk'_{P,F}) \leftarrow \text{KEYGEN}()$ 
8: if  $\text{len}(\text{hops}) > 1$  then // we are not the last hop
9: define new VIRT ITI  $\text{host}'_P$ 
10: input (VIRTUALISING,  $\text{host}'_P$ ,  $(sk'_{P,F}, pk'_{P,F})$ ,  $pk'_{\bar{P},F}$ ,  $pk_{P,\text{out}}$ , hops[1:], fundee,  $c_{\text{virt}}$ ,  $c_{\bar{P}}$ ,  $c_P$ ,  $i$ ,  $n$ ) to hops[1].left and expect reply (VIRTUALISING ACK,  $\text{host\_sibling}$ ,  $pk_{\text{sib},\bar{P},F}$ )
11: input (INIT,  $\text{host}_P$ ,  $\text{host}'_{\bar{P}}$ ,  $\text{host\_sibling}$ ,  $(sk'_{P,F}, pk'_{P,F})$ ,  $pk'_{\bar{P},F}$ ,  $pk_{\text{sib},\bar{P},F}$ ,  $(sk_{P,F}, pk_{P,F})$ ,  $pk_{\bar{P},F}$ ,  $pk_{P,\text{out}}$ ,  $c_P$ ,  $c_{\bar{P}}$ ,  $c_{\text{virt}}$ ,  $i$ ,  $t_P$ , "left",  $n$ ) to  $\text{host}'_P$  and expect reply (HOST INIT OK)
12: else // we are the last hop
13: input (INIT,  $\text{host}_P$ ,  $\text{host}'_{\bar{P}}$ , fundee=fundee,  $(sk'_{P,F}, pk'_{P,F})$ ,  $pk'_{\bar{P},F}$ ,  $(sk_{P,F}, pk_{P,F})$ ,  $pk_{\bar{P},F}$ ,  $pk_{P,\text{out}}$ ,  $c_P$ ,  $c_{\bar{P}}$ ,  $c_{\text{virt}}$ ,  $t_P$ ,  $i$ , "left",  $n$ ) to new VIRT ITI  $\text{host}'_P$  and expect reply (HOST INIT OK)
14: end if
15:  $\text{State} \leftarrow \text{WAITING FOR REVOCATION}$ 
16: send (VIRTUALISING ACK,  $\text{host}'_{\bar{P}}$ ,  $pk'_{\bar{P},F}$ ) to  $\bar{P}$ 
17: On input (VIRTUALISING,  $\text{host\_sibling}$ ,  $(sk'_{P,F}, pk'_{P,F})$ ,  $pk_{\text{sib},\bar{P},F}$ ,  $pk_{\text{sib},\text{out}}$ , hops, fundee,  $c_{\text{virt}}$ ,  $c_{\text{sib},\text{rem}}$ ,  $c_{\text{sib}}$ ,  $i$ ,  $n$ ) by sibling:
18: ensure  $\text{State} = \text{OPEN}$ 
19: ensure  $c_P - \text{locked}_P \geq c_{\text{virt}}$ 
20: ensure  $c_{\text{sib},\text{rem}} \geq c_P \wedge c_{\bar{P}} \geq c_{\text{sib}}$  // avoid value loss by grieving attack: one counterparty closes with old version, the other stays idle forever
21:  $\text{State} \leftarrow \text{VIRTUALISING}$ 
22:  $\text{locked}_P \leftarrow \text{locked}_P + c_{\text{virt}}$ 
23: define new VIRT ITI  $\text{host}'_P$ 
24: send (VIRTUALISING,  $\text{host}'_P$ ,  $pk'_{P,F}$ , hops, fundee,  $c_{\text{virt}}$ ,  $i+1$ ,  $n$ ) to hops[0].right and expect reply (VIRTUALISING ACK,  $\text{host}'_{\bar{P}}$ ,  $pk'_{\bar{P},F}$ )
25: ensure  $pk'_{\bar{P},F}$  is different from  $pk_{\bar{P},F}$  and all older  $\bar{P}$ 's funding public keys
26: LN.UPDATEFORVIRTUAL()
27: input (INIT,  $\text{host}_P$ ,  $\text{host}'_{\bar{P}}$ ,  $\text{host\_sibling}$ ,  $(sk'_{P,F}, pk'_{P,F})$ ,  $pk'_{\bar{P},F}$ ,  $pk_{\text{sib},\bar{P},F}$ ,  $(sk_{P,F}, pk_{P,F})$ ,  $pk_{\bar{P},F}$ ,  $pk_{\text{sib},\text{out}}$ ,  $c_P$ ,  $c_{\bar{P}}$ ,  $c_{\text{virt}}$ ,  $i$ , "right",  $n$ ) to  $\text{host}'_P$  and expect reply (HOST INIT OK)
28:  $\text{State} \leftarrow \text{WAITING FOR REVOCATION}$ 
29: output (VIRTUALISING ACK,  $\text{host}'_{\bar{P}}$ ,  $pk'_{\bar{P},F}$ ) to sibling

```

Figure 42



### Process LN.SIGNATURESROUNDTRIP()

```

1:  $C_{\bar{P},i+1} \leftarrow C_{\bar{P},i}$  with  $pk_{P,R,i+1}$  and  $pk_{\bar{P},R,i+1}$  instead of
 $pk_{P,R,i}$  and  $pk_{\bar{P},R,i}$  respectively, and  $x$  coins moved from
 $P$ 's to  $\bar{P}$ 's output
2:  $sig_{P,C,i+1} \leftarrow \text{SIGN}(C_{\bar{P},i+1}, sk_{P,F})$  // kept by  $\bar{P}$ 
3:  $(sk_{P,R,i+2}, pk_{P,R,i+2}) \leftarrow \text{KEYGEN}()$ 
4:  $State \leftarrow \text{WAITING FOR COMMITMENT SIGNED}$ 
5: send (PAY,  $x$ ,  $sig_{P,C,i+1}$ ,  $pk_{P,R,i+2}$ ) to  $\bar{P}$ 
6: //  $P$  refers to payer and  $\bar{P}$  to payee both in local and remote
code
7: ensure  $State = \text{WAITING TO GET PAID} \wedge x = y$ 
8:  $C_{\bar{P},i+1} \leftarrow C_{\bar{P},i}$  with  $pk_{P,R,i+1}$  and  $pk_{\bar{P},R,i+1}$  instead of
 $pk_{P,R,i}$  and  $pk_{\bar{P},R,i}$  respectively, and  $x$  coins moved from
 $P$ 's to  $\bar{P}$ 's output
9: ensure  $\text{VERIFY}(C_{\bar{P},i+1}, sig_{P,C,i+1}, pk_{P,F}) = \text{True}$ 
10:  $C_{P,i+1} \leftarrow C_{P,i}$  with  $pk_{\bar{P},R,i+1}$  and  $pk_{P,R,i+1}$  instead of
 $pk_{\bar{P},R,i}$  and  $pk_{P,R,i}$  respectively, and  $x$  coins moved from
 $P$ 's to  $\bar{P}$ 's output
11:  $sig_{\bar{P},C,i+1} \leftarrow \text{SIGN}(C_{P,i+1}, sk_{\bar{P},F})$  // kept by  $P$ 
12:  $R_{P,i} \leftarrow \text{TX}$  {input:  $C_{\bar{P},i}$ .outputs. $\bar{P}$ , output: ( $c_{\bar{P}}$ ,  $pk_{P,out}$ )}
13:  $sig_{\bar{P},R,i} \leftarrow \text{SIGN}(R_{P,i}, sk_{\bar{P},R,i})$ 
14:  $(sk_{\bar{P},R,i+2}, pk_{\bar{P},R,i+2}) \leftarrow \text{KEYGEN}()$ 
15:  $State \leftarrow \text{WAITING FOR PAY REVOCATION}$ 
16: reply (COMMITMENT SIGNED,  $sig_{\bar{P},C,i+1}$ ,  $sig_{\bar{P},R,i}$ ,
 $pk_{\bar{P},R,i+2}$ )
17: ensure  $State = \text{WAITING FOR COMMITMENT SIGNED}$ 
18:  $C_{P,i+1} \leftarrow C_{P,i}$  with  $pk_{\bar{P},R,i+1}$  and  $pk_{P,R,i+1}$  instead of
 $pk_{\bar{P},R,i}$  and  $pk_{P,R,i}$  respectively, and  $x$  coins moved from
 $P$ 's to  $\bar{P}$ 's output

```

Figure 43

### Process LN.REVOCATIONSTRIP()

```

1: ensure  $\text{VERIFY}(C_{P,i+1}, sig_{\bar{P},C,i+1}, pk_{\bar{P},F}) = \text{True}$ 
2:  $R_{P,i} \leftarrow \text{TX}$  {input:  $C_{\bar{P},i}$ .outputs. $\bar{P}$ , output: ( $c_{\bar{P}}$ ,  $pk_{P,out}$ )}
3: ensure  $\text{VERIFY}(R_{P,i}, sig_{\bar{P},R,i}, pk_{\bar{P},R,i}) = \text{True}$ 
4:  $R_{\bar{P},i} \leftarrow \text{TX}$  {input:  $C_{P,i}$ .outputs. $P$ , output: ( $c_P$ ,  $pk_{\bar{P},out}$ )}
5:  $sig_{P,R,i} \leftarrow \text{SIGN}(R_{\bar{P},i}, sk_{P,R,i})$ 
6: add  $x$  to paid_out
7:  $c_P \leftarrow c_P - x$ ;  $c_{\bar{P}} \leftarrow c_{\bar{P}} + x$ ;  $i \leftarrow i + 1$ 
8:  $State \leftarrow \text{OPEN}$ 
9: if  $host_P \neq \text{"ledger"} \wedge$  we have a host_sibling
then // we are intermediary channel
10: input (NEW BALANCE,  $c_P$ ,  $c_{\bar{P}}$ ) to  $host_P$ 
11: relay message as input to sibling // run by VIRT
12: relay message as output to guest // run by VIRT
13: store new sibling balance and reply (NEW BALANCE OK)
14: output (NEW BALANCE OK) to sibling // run by VIRT
15: output (NEW BALANCE OK) to guest // run by VIRT
16: end if
17: send (REVOKE AND ACK,  $sig_{P,R,i}$ ) to  $\bar{P}$ 
18: ensure  $State = \text{WAITING FOR PAY REVOCATION}$ 
19:  $R_{\bar{P},i} \leftarrow \text{TX}$  {input:  $C_{P,i}$ .outputs. $P$ , output: ( $c_P$ ,  $pk_{\bar{P},out}$ )}
20: ensure  $\text{VERIFY}(R_{\bar{P},i}, sig_{P,R,i}, pk_{P,R,i}) = \text{True}$ 
21: add  $x$  to paid_in
22:  $c_P \leftarrow c_P - x$ ;  $c_{\bar{P}} \leftarrow c_{\bar{P}} + x$ ;  $i \leftarrow i + 1$ 
23:  $State \leftarrow \text{OPEN}$ 

```

```

24: if  $host_P \neq \text{"ledger"} \wedge \bar{P}$  has a host_sibling then
// we are intermediary channel
25: input (NEW BALANCE,  $c_{\bar{P}}$ ,  $c_P$ ) to  $host_P$ 
26: relay message as input to sibling // run by VIRT
27: relay message as output to guest // run by VIRT
28: store new sibling balance and reply (NEW BALANCE OK)
29: output (NEW BALANCE OK) to sibling // run by VIRT
30: output (NEW BALANCE OK) to guest // run by VIRT
31: end if

```

Figure 44

### Process LN – On (PAY, $x$ ):

```

1: ensure  $State = \text{OPEN} \wedge c_P \geq x$ 
2: if  $host_P \neq \text{"ledger"} \wedge P$  has a host_sibling then
// we are intermediary channel
3: ensure  $c_{sib,rem} \geq c_P - x \wedge c_{\bar{P}} + x \geq c_{sib}$  // avoid value
loss by griefing attack: one counterparty closes with old
version, the other stays idle forever
4: end if
5: LN.SIGNATURESROUNDTRIP()
6: LN.REVOCATIONSTRIP()
7: // No output is given to the caller, this is intentional

```

Figure 45

### Process LN – On (GET PAID, $y$ ):

```

1: ensure  $State = \text{OPEN} \wedge c_{\bar{P}} \geq y$ 
2: if  $host_P \neq \text{"ledger"} \wedge P$  has a host_sibling then
// we are intermediary channel
3: ensure  $c_P + y \leq c_{sib,rem} \wedge c_{sib} \leq c_{\bar{P}} - y$  // avoid value
loss by griefing attack
4: end if
5: store  $y$ 
6:  $State \leftarrow \text{WAITING TO GET PAID}$ 

```

Figure 46

### Process LN – On (CHECK FOR LATERAL CLOSE):

```

1: if  $host_P \neq \text{"ledger"} \wedge$  then
2: input (CHECK FOR LATERAL CLOSE) to  $host_P$ 
3: end if

```

Figure 47

**Process LN – On (CHECK CHAIN FOR CLOSED):**

```

1: ensure  $State \notin \{\perp, INIT, TOPPED\ UP\}$  // channel open
2: // even virtual channels check  $\mathcal{G}_{Ledger}$  directly. This is intentional
3: input (READ) to  $\mathcal{G}_{Ledger}$  and assign reply to  $\Sigma$ 
4:  $last\_poll \leftarrow |\Sigma|$ 
5: if  $\exists 0 \leq j < i : C_{\bar{P},j} \in \Sigma$  then // counterparty has closed maliciously
6:    $State \leftarrow CLOSING$ 
7:   LN.SUBMITANDCHECKREVOCATION( $j$ )
8:    $State \leftarrow CLOSED$ 
9:   output (CLOSED)
10: else if  $C_{P,i} \in \Sigma \vee C_{\bar{P},i} \in \Sigma$  then
11:    $State \leftarrow CLOSED$ 
12:   output (CLOSED)
13: else
14:    $state\_before\_checking\_revoked \leftarrow State$ 
15:   for each host in list of old hosts do
16:      $State \leftarrow WAITING\ FOR\ NOTHING\ REVOKED$ 
17:     input (CHECK FOR REVOKED) to host and expect output (NOTHING REVOKED)
18:      $State \leftarrow state\_before\_checking\_revoked$ 
19:   end for
20: end if

```

Figure 48

**Process LN.SUBMITANDCHECKREVOCATION( $j$ ):**

```

1:  $sig_{P,R,j} \leftarrow SIGN(R_{P,j}, sk_{P,R,j})$ 
2: input (SUBMIT, ( $R_{P,j}$ ,  $sig_{P,R,j}$ ,  $sig_{\bar{P},R,j}$ )) to  $\mathcal{G}_{Ledger}$ 
3: while  $\neg \exists R_{P,j} \in \Sigma$  do
4:   wait for input (CHECK REVOCATION) // ignore other messages
5:   input (READ) to  $\mathcal{G}_{Ledger}$  and assign output to  $\Sigma$ 
6: end while
7:  $c_P \leftarrow c_P + c_{\bar{P}}$ 
8: if  $host_P \neq \text{"ledger"}$  then
9:   input (USED REVOCATION) to  $host_P$ 
10: end if

```

Figure 49

**Process LN – On (FORCECLOSE):**

```

1: ensure  $State \notin \{\perp, INIT, TOPPED\ UP, CLOSED, BASE\ PUNISHED\}$  // channel open
2: if  $host_P \neq \text{"ledger"}$  then // we have a virtual channel
3:    $State \leftarrow HOST\ CLOSING$ 
4:   input (FORCECLOSE) to  $host_P$  and keep relaying any (CHECK IF CLOSING) or (FORCECLOSE) input to  $host_P$  until receiving output (CLOSED) by  $host_P$ 
5:    $host_P \leftarrow \text{"ledger"}$ 
6: end if
7:  $State \leftarrow CLOSING$ 
8: input (READ) to  $\mathcal{G}_{Ledger}$  and assign output to  $\Sigma$ 

```

```

9: if  $C_{\bar{P},i} \in \Sigma$  then // counterparty has closed honestly
10:   no-op // do nothing
11: else if  $\exists 0 \leq j < i : C_{\bar{P},j} \in \Sigma$  then // counterparty has closed maliciously
12:   LN.SUBMITANDCHECKREVOCATION( $j$ )
13: else // counterparty is idle
14:   while  $\neg \exists$  unspent output  $\in \Sigma$  that  $C_{P,i}$  can spend do // possibly due to an active timelock
15:     wait for input (CHECK VIRTUAL) // ignore other messages
16:     input (READ) to  $\mathcal{G}_{Ledger}$  and assign output to  $\Sigma$ 
17:   end while
18:    $sig'_{P,C,i} \leftarrow SIGN(C_{P,i}, sk_{P,F})$ 
19:   input (SUBMIT, ( $C_{P,i}$ ,  $sig_{P,C,i}$ ,  $sig'_{P,C,i}$ )) to  $\mathcal{G}_{Ledger}$ 
20: end if

```

Figure 50

**Process LN – punishment**

```

1: On output (ENABLER USED REVOCATION) by  $host_P$ :
2:    $State \leftarrow BASE\ PUNISHED$ 

```

Figure 51

**Process LN – On (COOPCLOSE):**

```

// any endpoint or intermediary can initiate virtual channel closing
1: ensure  $host_P \neq \text{"ledger"}$ 
2: ensure  $State = OPEN$ 
3:  $we\_are\_close\_initiator \leftarrow True$ 
4: if  $hosting = True \vee$  we have received OPEN from  $\mathcal{E}$  while  $State$  was TOPPED UP then // we are not the fundee of a channel that is not the base of any other channel
5:   if  $hosting = True$  then // we are not the funder of the channel to be closed
6:     the next time we are activated, if we are not activated by output (CHECK COOP CLOSE, ...) from  $host_P$ , set  $we\_are\_close\_initiator \leftarrow False$ 
7:   else // we are the funder of the channel to be closed
8:     the next time we are activated, if we are not activated by output (COOP CLOSE, ...) from  $\bar{P}$ , set  $we\_are\_close\_initiator \leftarrow False$ 
9:   end if
10:   send (COOP CLOSE) to fundee
11: else // we are the fundee of a channel that is not the base of any other channel
12:   the next time we are activated, if we are not activated by output (CHECK COOP CLOSE FUNDEE, ...) from  $host_P$ , set  $we\_are\_close\_initiator \leftarrow False$ 
13:    $close\_initiator \leftarrow P$ 
14:   execute code of Fig. 54
15: end if

```

Figure 52

**Process LN – On (COOPCLOSED) by  $R$ :**

```

1: if hosting = True then // we are intermediary
2:   ensure State = OPEN
3: else // we are endpoint
4:   ensure State = COOP CLOSED
5: end if
6: ensure we_are_close_initiator = True
7: ensure that the last cooperatively closed channel in which
   we acted as a base had  $R$  as its fundee
8: we_are_close_initiator ← False
9: output (COOPCLOSED)

```

Figure 53

**Process LN – On (COOP CLOSE) by  $R$ :**

// also executed when we are instructed to close a channel cooperatively by  $\mathcal{E}$  – c.f. Fig. 52, l. 14

```

1: ensure we are fundee
2: ensure hosting ≠ True
3: ensure State = OPEN
4: State ← COOP CLOSING
5: close_initiator ←  $R$ 
6: sig_bal ← (( $c_{\bar{P}}$ ,  $c_P$ ), SIGN(( $c_{\bar{P}}$ ,  $c_P$ ),  $sk_{P,F}$ ))
7: State ← WAITING TO REVOKE VIRT COMM
8: send (COOP CLOSE, sig_bal) to  $\bar{P}$ 

```

Figure 54

**Process LN – On (COOP CLOSE, sig\_bal $_{\bar{P}}$ ) by  $\bar{P}$ :**

```

1: ensure we are funder
2: ensure State = OPEN
3: parse sig_bal $_{\bar{P}}$  as (( $c'_1$ ,  $c'_2$ ), sig $_{\bar{P}}$ )
4: ensure
    $c_P = c'_1 \wedge c_{\bar{P}} = c'_2 \wedge \text{VERIFY}((c'_1, c'_2), \text{sig}_{\bar{P}}, pk_{\bar{P},F}) = \text{True}$ 
5: sig_bal ← (( $c_P$ ,  $c_{\bar{P}}$ ), SIGN(( $c_P$ ,  $c_{\bar{P}}$ ),  $sk_{P,F}$ ), sig $_{\bar{P}}$ )
6: State ← COOP CLOSING
7: input (COOP CLOSE, sig_bal) to host $_P$ 
8: ensure State = OPEN // executed by host $_P$ 
9: State ← COOP CLOSING
10: output (COOP CLOSE SIGN COMM FUNDER, ( $c'_1$ ,  $c'_2$ )) to
    guest
11: ensure State = OPEN // executed by guest of host $_P$ 
12: State ← COOP CLOSING
13: remove most recent keys from list of old funding keys and
    assign them to  $sk'_{P,F}$ ,  $pk'_{P,F}$ ,  $pk'_{\bar{P},F}$ 
14:  $C_{\bar{P},i+1} \leftarrow \text{TX}$  {input:
   ( $c_P + c_{\bar{P}} + c'_1 + c'_2$ ,  $2/\{pk'_{P,F}, pk'_{\bar{P},F}\}$ ), outputs:
   ( $c_P + c'_1$ ,  $pk_{P,\text{out}}$ ),
   ( $c_{\bar{P}} + c'_2$ , ( $pk_{\bar{P},\text{out}} + (p + s)) \vee 2/\{pk_{P,R,i+1}, pk_{\bar{P},R,i+1}\}$ )}}
15:  $\text{sig}_{P,C,i+1} \leftarrow \text{SIGN}(C_{\bar{P},i+1}, sk'_{P,F})$ 
16: ( $sk_{P,R,i+2}, pk_{P,R,i+2}$ ) ← KEYGEN()
17: input (NEW COMM TX, sig $_{P,C,i+1}$ ,  $pk_{P,R,i+2}$ ) to host $_P$ 
18: rename received signature to sig $_{1,\text{right},C}$  // executed by

```

```

host $_P$ 
19: rename received public key to  $pk_{1,\text{right},R}$ 
20: send (COOP CLOSE, sig_bal, sig $_{1,\text{right},C}$ ,  $pk_{1,\text{right},R}$ ) to
    $\bar{P}$  and expect reply (COOP CLOSE BACK,
   (right_comms_revkeys, right_revocations))
21:  $R_{\text{loc},\text{virt}} \leftarrow \text{TX}$  {input: ( $c_{\text{virt}}$ ,  $2/\{pk_{1,\text{rev}}, pk_{2,\text{rev}}\}$ ), output:
   ( $c_{\text{virt}}$ ,  $pk_{1,\text{out}}$ )}}
22: extract sig $_{2,\text{right},\text{rev},\text{virt}}$  from right_revocations
23: ensure VERIFY( $R_{\text{loc},\text{virt}}$ , sig $_{2,\text{right},\text{rev},\text{virt}}$ ,  $pk_{2,\text{rev}}$ ) = True
24:  $R_{\text{loc},\text{fund}} \leftarrow \text{TX}$  {input: ( $c_P + c_{\bar{P}}$ ,  $2/\{pk_{1,\text{rev}}, pk_{2,\text{rev}}\}$ ),
   output: ( $c_P + c_{\bar{P}}$ ,  $pk_{1,\text{out}}$ )}}
25: extract sig $_{2,\text{right},\text{rev},\text{fund}}$  from right_revocations
26: ensure VERIFY( $R_{\text{loc},\text{fund}}$ , sig $_{2,\text{right},\text{rev},\text{fund}}$ ,  $pk_{2,\text{rev}}$ ) = True
27: extract sig $_{2,\text{right},R}$  from right_revocations
28: extract sig $_{2,\text{right},C}$  from right_comms_revkeys
29: extract  $pk_{2,R}$  from right_comms_revkeys
30: output (VERIFY REVOKE, sig $_{2,\text{right},C}$ , sig $_{2,\text{right},R}$ ,  $pk_{2,R}$ ,
   host $_P$ ) to guest
31: store sig $_{2,\text{right},C}$  as sig $_{\bar{P},C,i+1}$  // executed by guest of
   host $_P$ 
32: store sig $_{2,\text{right},R}$  as sig $_{\bar{P},R,i}$ 
33: store received public key as  $pk_{\bar{P},R,i+2}$ 
34:  $C_{P,i+1} \leftarrow \text{TX}$  {input: ( $c_P + c_{\bar{P}} + c'_1 + c'_2$ ), outputs:
   ( $c_P + c'_1$ , ( $pk_{P,\text{out}} + (p + s)) \vee 2/\{pk_{P,R,i+1}, pk_{\bar{P},R,i+1}\}$ ),
   ( $c_{\bar{P}} + c'_2$ ,  $pk_{\bar{P},\text{out}}$ )}}
35: ensure VERIFY( $C_{P,i+1}$ , sig $_{\bar{P},C,i+1}$ ,  $pk'_{P,F}$ ) = True
36:  $R_{P,i} \leftarrow \text{TX}$  {input:  $C_{\bar{P},i}$ .outputs. $\bar{P}$ , output: ( $c_{\bar{P}}$ ,  $pk_{P,\text{out}}$ )}}
37: ensure VERIFY( $R_{P,i}$ , sig $_{\bar{P},R,i}$ ,  $pk_{\bar{P},R,i}$ ) = True
38: input (VERIFIED) to host $_P$ 
39: extract sig $_{n,\text{left},R}$  from right_revocations // executed
   by host $_P$ 
40: output (VERIFY REVOCATION, sig $_{n,\text{left},R}$ ) to funder
41:  $R_{P,i} \leftarrow \text{TX}$  {input:  $C_{\bar{P},i}$ .outputs. $\bar{P}$ , output: ( $c_{\bar{P}}$ ,  $pk_{P,\text{out}}$ )}}
42: ensure VERIFY( $R_{P,i}$ , sig $_{\bar{P},R,i}$ ,  $pk_{\bar{P},R,i}$ ) = True
43:  $R_{\bar{P},i} \leftarrow \text{TX}$  {input:  $C_{P,i}$ .outputs. $P$ , output: ( $c_P$ ,  $pk_{\bar{P},\text{out}}$ )}}
44: sig $_{P,R,i} \leftarrow \text{SIGN}(R_{\bar{P},i}, sk_{P,R,i})$ 
45: State ← COOP CLOSED // in LN, only virtual channels can
   end up in this state
46: input (COOP CLOSE REVOCATION, sig $_{P,R,i}$ ) to host $_P$ 
47: output (COOP CLOSE REVOCATIONS, host $_P$ ) to guest //
   executed by host $_P$ 
48:  $R_{\bar{P},i} \leftarrow \text{TX}$  {input:  $C_{P,i}$ .outputs. $P$ , output: ( $c_P$ ,  $pk_{\bar{P},\text{out}}$ )}}
   // executed by guest of host $_P$ 
49: sig $_{P,R,i} \leftarrow \text{SIGN}(R_{\bar{P},i}, sk_{P,R,i})$ 
50: add  $sk_{P,F}, pk_{P,F}, pk_{\bar{P},F}$  to list of old enable channel
   funding keys
51: add host $_P$  to list of old hosts
52: assign received host to host $_P$ 
53:  $c_P \leftarrow c_P + c'_1$ ;  $c_{\bar{P}} \leftarrow c_{\bar{P}} + c'_2$ 
54: layer ← layer – 1
55: locked $_P \leftarrow \text{locked}_P - c_{\text{virt}}$ 
56: State ← OPEN
57: input (REVOCATION, sig $_{P,R,i}$ ) to last old host
58: rename received signature to sig $_{1,\text{right},R}$  // executed by
   host $_P$ 
59:  $R_{\text{rem},\text{virt}} \leftarrow \text{TX}$  {input:
   ( $c_{\text{virt}}$ ,  $4/\{pk_{1,\text{rev}}, pk_{1,\text{rev}}, pk_{2,\text{rev}}, pk_{n,\text{rev}}\}$ ), output:
   ( $c_{\text{virt}}$ ,  $pk_{2,\text{out}}$ )}}
60: sig $_{1,\text{right},\text{rev},\text{virt}} \leftarrow \text{SIGN}(R_{\text{rem},\text{virt}}, sk_{1,\text{rev}})$ 
61:  $R_{\text{rem},\text{fund}} \leftarrow \text{TX}$  {input: ( $c_P + c_{\bar{P}}$ ,  $2/\{pk_{1,\text{rev}}, pk_{2,\text{rev}}\}$ ),
   output: ( $c_P + c_{\bar{P}}$ ,  $pk_{2,\text{out}}$ )}}
62: sig $_{1,\text{right},\text{rev},\text{fund}} \leftarrow \text{SIGN}(R_{\text{rem},\text{fund}}, sk_{1,\text{rev}})$ 
63: for all  $j \in \{2, \dots, n\}$  do
64:    $R_{j,\text{left}} \leftarrow \text{TX}$  {input:
   ( $c_{\text{virt}}$ ,  $4/\{pk_{1,\text{rev}}, pk_{j-1,\text{rev}}, pk_{j,\text{rev}}, pk_{n,\text{rev}}\}$ ), output:

```

```

    ( $c_{virt}, pk_{j,out}$ )
65:    $sig_{1,j,left,rev} \leftarrow SIGN(R_{j,left}, sk_{1,rev})$ 
66: end for
67:  $State \leftarrow COOP\ CLOSED$ 
68: send (COOP CLOSE REVOCATIONS, ( $sig_{1,right,R},$ 
     $sig_{1,right,rev,virt}, sig_{1,right,rev,fund},$ 
     $(sig_{1,j,left,rev})_{j \in \{2,\dots,n\}}$ ) to  $\bar{P}$ 

```

Figure 55

**Process LN – On (CORRUPT) by  $\mathcal{A}$  or kindred party  $R$ :**

```

// This is executed by the shell – c.f. [12]
1: if  $State \neq CORRUPTED$  then
2:    $State \leftarrow CORRUPTED$ 
3:   for  $S \in$  set of kindred parties do
4:     input (CORRUPT) to  $S$  and expect reply (OK)
5:   end for
6: end if
7: reply (OK)

```

Figure 56

**Process VIRT**

```

1: On every activation, before handling the message:
2:   if  $last\_poll \neq \perp$  then // virtual layer is ready
3:     input (READ) to  $\mathcal{G}_{Ledger}$  and assign output to  $\Sigma$ 
4:     if  $last\_poll + p < |\Sigma|$  then
5:       for  $P \in \{guest, funder, fundee\}$  do // at
        most 1 of funder, fundee is defined
6:         ensure  $P.NEGLIGENT()$  returns (OK)
7:       end for
8:     end if
9:   end if

10: // guest is trusted to give sane inputs, therefore a state
    machine and input verification are redundant
11: On input (INIT,  $host_P, \bar{P}$ , sibling, fundee,
    ( $sk_{loc,fund,new}, pk_{loc,fund,new}$ ),  $pk_{rem,fund,new}$ ,
     $pk_{sib,rem,fund,new}$ , ( $sk_{loc,fund,old}, pk_{loc,fund,old}$ ),
     $pk_{rem,fund,old}, pk_{loc,out}, c_P, c_{\bar{P}}, c_{virt}, t_P, i, side, n$ ) by
    guest:
12:   ensure  $1 < i \leq n$  //  $host\_funder$  ( $i = 1$ ) is initialised
    with HOST ME
13:   ensure  $side \in \{“left”, “right”\}$ 
14:   store message contents and guest // sibling,
     $pk_{sib,\bar{P},F}$  are missing for endpoints, fundee is present only
    in last node
15:   ( $sk_{i,fund,new}, pk_{i,fund,new}$ )  $\leftarrow$  ( $sk_{loc,fund,new}, pk_{loc,fund,new}$ )
16:    $pk_{myRem,fund,new} \leftarrow pk_{rem,fund,new}$ 
17:   if  $i < n$  then // we are not last hop
18:      $pk_{sibRem,fund,new} \leftarrow pk_{sib,rem,fund,new}$ 
19:   end if
20:   if  $side = “left”$  then
21:      $side' \leftarrow “right”$ ;  $myRem \leftarrow i - 1$ ;  $sibRem \leftarrow i + 1$ 

```

```

22:    $pk_{i,out} \leftarrow pk_{loc,out}$ 
23:   ( $sk_{i,j,k}, pk_{i,j,k}$ ) $_{j \in \{2,\dots,n-1\}, k \in [n] \setminus \{j\}} \leftarrow$ 
     $KEYGEN()^{(n-2)(n-1)}$ 
24:   ( $sk_{i,rev}, pk_{i,rev}$ )  $\leftarrow KEYGEN()$ 
25:   else //  $side = “right”$ 
26:      $side' \leftarrow “left”$ ;  $myRem \leftarrow i + 1$ ;  $sibRem \leftarrow i - 1$ 
27:     // sibling will send keys in KEYS AND COINS
    FORWARD
28:   end if
29:   ( $sk_{i,side,fund,old}, pk_{i,side,fund,old}$ )  $\leftarrow$ 
    ( $sk_{loc,fund,old}, pk_{loc,fund,old}$ )
30:    $pk_{myRem,side',fund,old} \leftarrow pk_{rem,fund,old}$ 
31:   ( $c_{i,side}, c_{myRem,side'}, t_{i,side}$ )  $\leftarrow (c_P, c_{\bar{P}}, t_P)$ 
32:    $last\_poll \leftarrow \perp$ 
33:   output (HOST INIT OK) to guest

34: On input (HOST ME, funder, fundee,  $\bar{P}$ ,  $host_P, c_P,$ 
     $c_{\bar{P}}, c_{virt}, pk_{left,virt}, pk_{right,virt}, (sk_{1,fund,new}, pk_{1,fund,new}),$ 
    ( $sk_{1,right,fund,old}, pk_{1,right,fund,old}$ ),  $pk_{2,left,fund,old},$ 
     $pk_{2,left,fund,new}, pk_{1,out}, n$ ) by guest:
35:    $last\_poll \leftarrow \perp$ 
36:    $i \leftarrow 1$ 
37:    $c_{1,right} \leftarrow c_P$ ;  $c_{2,left} \leftarrow c_{\bar{P}}$ 
38:   ( $sk_{1,j,k}, pk_{1,j,k}$ ) $_{j \in \{2,\dots,n-1\}, k \in [n] \setminus \{j\}} \leftarrow$ 
     $KEYGEN()^{(n-2)(n-1)}$ 
39:   ( $sk_{1,rev}, pk_{1,loc,rev}$ )  $\leftarrow KEYGEN()$ 
40:   ensure VIRT.CIRCULATEKEYSCOINSTIMES() returns
    (OK)
41:   ensure VIRT.CIRCULATEVIRTUALSIGS() returns (OK)
42:   ensure VIRT.CIRCULATEFUNDINGSIGS() returns (OK)
43:   ensure VIRT.CIRCULATEREVOCATIONS() returns (OK)
44:   output (HOSTS READY,  $p + \sum_{j=2}^{n-1} (s - 1 + t_j)$ ) to guest
    //  $p$  is every how many blocks we have to check the chain

```

Figure 57

**Process VIRT.CIRCULATEKEYSCOINSTIMES(left\_data):**

```

1: if left_data is given as argument then // we are not
     $host\_funder$ 
2:   parse left_data as ( $(pk_{j,fund,new})_{j \in [i-1]},$ 
    ( $pk_{j,left,fund,old}$ ) $_{j \in \{2,\dots,i-1\}}$ , ( $pk_{j,right,fund,old}$ ) $_{j \in [i-1]}$ ,
    ( $pk_{j,out}$ ) $_{j \in [i-1]}$ , ( $c_{j,left}$ ) $_{j \in \{2,\dots,i-1\}}$ , ( $c_{j,right}$ ) $_{j \in [i-1]}$ ,
    ( $t_j$ ) $_{j \in [i-1]}$ ,  $pk_{left,virt}, pk_{right,virt},$ 
    ( $pk_{h,j,k}$ ) $_{h \in [i-1], j \in \{2,\dots,n-1\}, k \in [n] \setminus \{j\}}$ , ( $pk_{h,loc,rev}$ ) $_{h \in [i-1]}$ ,
    ( $pk_{h,rem,rev}$ ) $_{h \in [i-1]}$ )
3:   if we have a sibling then // we are not
     $host\_fundee$ 
4:     input (KEYS AND COINS FORWARD, (left_data,
    ( $sk_{i,left,fund,old}, pk_{i,left,fund,old}$ ),  $pk_{i,out}, c_{i,left}, t_{i,left},$ 
    ( $sk_{i,j,k}, pk_{i,j,k}$ ) $_{j \in \{2,\dots,n-1\}, k \in [n] \setminus \{j\}}$ , ( $sk_{i,rev}, pk_{i,rev}$ )) to
    sibling
5:     store input as left_data and parse it as
    ( $(pk_{j,fund,new})_{j \in [i-1]}, (pk_{j,left,fund,old})_{j \in \{2,\dots,i\}},$ 
    ( $pk_{j,right,fund,old}$ ) $_{j \in [i-1]}$ , ( $pk_{j,out}$ ) $_{j \in [i]}$ , ( $c_{j,left}$ ) $_{j \in \{2,\dots,i\}},$ 
    ( $c_{j,right}$ ) $_{j \in [i-1]}$ , ( $t_j$ ) $_{j \in [i-1]}$ ,  $sk_{i,left,fund,old}, t_{i,left},$ 
     $pk_{left,virt}, pk_{right,virt}, (pk_{h,j,k})_{h \in [i], j \in \{2,\dots,n-1\}, k \in [n] \setminus \{j\}},$ 
    ( $sk_{i,j,k}$ ) $_{j \in \{2,\dots,n-1\}, k \in [n] \setminus \{j\}}$ , ( $pk_{h,rev}$ ) $_{h \in [i]}$ ,  $sk_{i,rev}$ 
6:      $t_i \leftarrow \max(t_{i,left}, t_{i,right})$ 
7:     replace  $t_{i,left}$  in left_data with  $t_i$ 

```



```

8:   remove  $sk_{i,\text{left},\text{fund},\text{old}}$ ,
   ( $sk_{i,j,k}$ ) $_{j \in \{2, \dots, n-1\}, k \in [n] \setminus \{j\}}$ ,  $sk_{i,\text{loc},\text{rev}}$  and  $sk_{i,\text{rem},\text{rev}}$ 
   from  $\text{left\_data}$ 
9:   call
10:  VIRT.CIRCULATEKEYSCOINSTIMES( $\text{left\_data}$ ) of  $\bar{P}$ 
   and assign returned value to  $\text{right\_data}$ 
11:  parse  $\text{right\_data}$  as ( $pk_{j,\text{fund},\text{new}}$ ) $_{j \in \{i+1, \dots, n\}}$ ,
   ( $pk_{j,\text{left},\text{fund},\text{old}}$ ) $_{j \in \{i+1, \dots, n\}}$ ,
   ( $pk_{j,\text{right},\text{fund},\text{old}}$ ) $_{j \in \{i+1, \dots, n-1\}}$ , ( $pk_{j,\text{out}}$ ) $_{j \in \{i+1, \dots, n\}}$ ,
   ( $c_{j,\text{left}}$ ) $_{j \in \{i+1, \dots, n\}}$ , ( $c_{j,\text{right}}$ ) $_{j \in \{i+1, \dots, n-1\}}$ ,
   ( $t_j$ ) $_{j \in \{i+1, \dots, n\}}$ ,
   ( $pk_{h,j,k}$ ) $_{h \in \{i+1, \dots, n\}, j \in \{2, \dots, n-1\}, k \in [n] \setminus \{j\}}$ ,
   ( $pk_{h,\text{rev}}$ ) $_{h \in \{i+1, \dots, n\}}$ 
12:  output (KEYS AND COINS BACK,  $\text{right\_data}$ ,
   ( $sk_{i,\text{right},\text{fund},\text{old}}$ ,  $pk_{i,\text{right},\text{fund},\text{old}}$ ),  $c_{i,\text{right}}$ ,  $t_i$ )
13:  store output as  $\text{right\_data}$  and parse it as
   ( $pk_{j,\text{fund},\text{new}}$ ) $_{j \in \{i+1, \dots, n\}}$ , ( $pk_{j,\text{left},\text{fund},\text{old}}$ ) $_{j \in \{i+1, \dots, n\}}$ ,
   ( $pk_{j,\text{right},\text{fund},\text{old}}$ ) $_{j \in \{i, \dots, n-1\}}$ , ( $pk_{j,\text{out}}$ ) $_{j \in \{i+1, \dots, n\}}$ ,
   ( $c_{j,\text{left}}$ ) $_{j \in \{i+1, \dots, n\}}$ , ( $c_{j,\text{right}}$ ) $_{j \in \{i, \dots, n-1\}}$ , ( $t_j$ ) $_{j \in \{i, \dots, n\}}$ ,
   ( $pk_{h,j,k}$ ) $_{h \in \{i+1, \dots, n\}, j \in \{2, \dots, n-1\}, k \in [n] \setminus \{j\}}$ ,
   ( $pk_{h,\text{loc},\text{rev}}$ ) $_{h \in \{i+1, \dots, n\}}$ , ( $pk_{h,\text{rem},\text{rev}}$ ) $_{h \in \{i+1, \dots, n\}}$ ,
    $sk_{i,\text{right},\text{fund},\text{old}}$ 
14:  remove  $sk_{i,\text{right},\text{fund},\text{old}}$  from  $\text{right\_data}$ 
15:  return ( $\text{right\_data}$ ,  $pk_{i,\text{fund},\text{new}}$ ,  $pk_{i,\text{left},\text{fund},\text{old}}$ ,
    $pk_{i,\text{out}}$ ,  $c_{i,\text{left}}$ )
16:  else // we are host_fundee
17:  output (CHECK KEYS, ( $pk_{\text{left},\text{virt}}$ ,  $pk_{\text{right},\text{virt}}$ )) to
   fundee and expect reply (KEYS OK)
18:  return ( $pk_{n,\text{fund},\text{new}}$ ,  $pk_{n,\text{left},\text{fund},\text{old}}$ ,  $pk_{n,\text{out}}$ ,  $c_{n,\text{left}}$ ,
    $t_n$ , ( $pk_{n,j,k}$ ) $_{j \in \{2, \dots, n-1\}, k \in [n] \setminus \{j\}}$ ,  $pk_{n,\text{loc},\text{rev}}$ ,  $pk_{n,\text{rem},\text{rev}}$ )
19:  end if
20:  else // we are host_funder
21:  call VIRT.CIRCULATEKEYSCOINSTIMES( $pk_{1,\text{fund},\text{new}}$ ,
    $pk_{1,\text{right},\text{fund},\text{old}}$ ,  $pk_{1,\text{out}}$ ,  $c_{1,\text{right}}$ ,  $t_1$ ,  $pk_{\text{left},\text{virt}}$ ,  $pk_{\text{right},\text{virt}}$ ,
   ( $pk_{1,j,k}$ ) $_{j \in \{2, \dots, n-1\}, k \in [n] \setminus \{j\}}$ ,  $pk_{1,\text{loc},\text{rev}}$ ,  $pk_{1,\text{rem},\text{rev}}$ ) of  $\bar{P}$ 
   and assign returned value to  $\text{right\_data}$ 
22:  parse  $\text{right\_data}$  as ( $pk_{j,\text{fund},\text{new}}$ ) $_{j \in \{2, \dots, n\}}$ ,
   ( $pk_{j,\text{left},\text{fund},\text{old}}$ ) $_{j \in \{2, \dots, n\}}$ , ( $pk_{j,\text{right},\text{fund},\text{old}}$ ) $_{j \in \{2, \dots, n-1\}}$ ,
   ( $pk_{j,\text{out}}$ ) $_{j \in \{2, \dots, n\}}$ , ( $c_{j,\text{left}}$ ) $_{j \in \{2, \dots, n\}}$ , ( $c_{j,\text{right}}$ ) $_{j \in \{2, \dots, n-1\}}$ ,
   ( $t_j$ ) $_{j \in \{2, \dots, n\}}$ , ( $pk_{h,j,k}$ ) $_{h \in \{2, \dots, n\}, j \in \{2, \dots, n-1\}, k \in [n] \setminus \{j\}}$ ,
   ( $pk_{h,\text{loc},\text{rev}}$ ) $_{h \in \{2, \dots, n\}}$ , ( $pk_{h,\text{rem},\text{rev}}$ ) $_{h \in \{2, \dots, n\}}$ 
23:  return (OK)
24:  end if

```

Figure 58

### Process VIRT

```

1: GETMIDTXS( $i$ ,  $n$ ,  $C_{\text{virt}}$ ,  $C_{\text{rem},\text{left}}$ ,  $C_{\text{loc},\text{left}}$ ,  $C_{\text{loc},\text{right}}$ ,
    $C_{\text{rem},\text{right}}$ ,  $pk_{\text{rem},\text{left},\text{fund},\text{old}}$ ,  $pk_{\text{loc},\text{left},\text{fund},\text{old}}$ ,
    $pk_{\text{loc},\text{right},\text{fund},\text{old}}$ ,  $pk_{\text{rem},\text{right},\text{fund},\text{old}}$ ,  $pk_{\text{rem},\text{left},\text{fund},\text{new}}$ ,
    $pk_{\text{loc},\text{left},\text{fund},\text{new}}$ ,  $pk_{\text{loc},\text{right},\text{fund},\text{new}}$ ,  $pk_{\text{rem},\text{right},\text{fund},\text{new}}$ ,
    $pk_{\text{left},\text{virt}}$ ,  $pk_{\text{right},\text{virt}}$ ,  $pk_{\text{loc},\text{out}}$ ,  $pk_{\text{funder},\text{rev}}$ ,  $pk_{\text{left},\text{rev}}$ ,
    $pk_{\text{loc},\text{rev}}$ ,  $pk_{\text{right},\text{rev}}$ ,  $pk_{\text{fundee},\text{rev}}$ ,
   ( $pk_{h,j,k}$ ) $_{h \in [n], j \in [n-1] \setminus \{1\}, k \in [n-1] \setminus \{1,j\}}$ , ( $pk_{h,2,1}$ ) $_{h \in [n]}$ ,
   ( $pk_{h,n-1,n}$ ) $_{h \in [n]}$ , ( $t_j$ ) $_{j \in [n-1] \setminus \{1\}}$ ):
2:  ensure  $1 < i < n$ 
3:  ensure  $C_{\text{rem},\text{left}} \geq C_{\text{virt}} \wedge C_{\text{loc},\text{left}} \geq C_{\text{virt}}$  // left parties
   fund virtual channel
4:  ensure  $C_{\text{rem},\text{left}} \geq C_{\text{loc},\text{right}} \wedge C_{\text{rem},\text{right}} \geq C_{\text{loc},\text{left}}$  //
   avoid grieving attack

```

```

5:   $C_{\text{left}} \leftarrow C_{\text{rem},\text{left}} + C_{\text{loc},\text{left}}$ ;  $C_{\text{right}} \leftarrow C_{\text{loc},\text{right}} + C_{\text{rem},\text{right}}$ 
6:   $\text{left\_old\_fund} \leftarrow$ 
    $2/\{pk_{\text{rem},\text{left},\text{fund},\text{old}}, pk_{\text{loc},\text{left},\text{fund},\text{old}}\}$ 
7:   $\text{right\_old\_fund} \leftarrow$ 
    $2/\{pk_{\text{loc},\text{right},\text{fund},\text{old}}, pk_{\text{rem},\text{right},\text{fund},\text{old}}\}$ 
8:   $\text{left\_new\_fund} \leftarrow$ 
    $2/\{pk_{\text{rem},\text{left},\text{fund},\text{new}}, pk_{\text{loc},\text{left},\text{fund},\text{new}}\} \vee$ 
    $2/\{pk_{\text{left},\text{rev}}, pk_{\text{loc},\text{rev}}\}$ 
9:   $\text{right\_new\_fund} \leftarrow$ 
    $2/\{pk_{\text{loc},\text{right},\text{fund},\text{new}}, pk_{\text{rem},\text{right},\text{fund},\text{new}}\} \vee$ 
    $2/\{pk_{\text{loc},\text{rev}}, pk_{\text{right},\text{rev}}\}$ 
10:  $\text{virt\_fund} \leftarrow 2/\{pk_{\text{left},\text{virt}}, pk_{\text{right},\text{virt}}\}$ 
11:  $\text{revocation} \leftarrow$ 
    $4/\{pk_{\text{funder},\text{rev}}, pk_{\text{loc},\text{rev}}, pk_{\text{right},\text{rev}}, pk_{\text{fundee},\text{rev}}\}$ 
12:  $\text{refund} \leftarrow (pk_{\text{loc},\text{out}} + (p + s)) \vee 2/\{pk_{\text{left},\text{rev}}, pk_{\text{loc},\text{rev}}\}$ 
13: for all  $j \in [n-1] \setminus \{1\}$ ,  $k \in [n-1] \setminus \{1, j\}$  do
14:    $\text{all}_{j,k} \leftarrow n/\{pk_{1,j,k}, \dots, pk_{n,j,k}\} \wedge "k"$ 
15: end for
16: if  $i = 2$  then
17:    $\text{all}_{2,1} \leftarrow n/\{pk_{1,2,1}, \dots, pk_{n,2,1}\} \wedge "1"$ 
18: end if
19: if  $i = n-1$  then
20:    $\text{all}_{n-1,n} \leftarrow n/\{pk_{1,n-1,n}, \dots, pk_{n,n-1,n}\} \wedge "n"$ 
21: end if
22: if  $i = 2$  then  $m \leftarrow 1$  else  $m \leftarrow 2$ 
23: if  $i = n-1$  then  $l \leftarrow n$  else  $l \leftarrow n-1$ 
24:  $\text{bridge}_1 \leftarrow 4/\{pk_{1,2,1}, pk_{i-1,2,1}, pk_{i+1,2,1}, pk_{n,2,1}\} \wedge "1"$ 
   // We reuse the  $pk_{j,2,1}$  keys for all bridges to avoid new
   keys
25:  $\text{revocation}_1 \leftarrow$ 
    $4/\{pk_{\text{funder},\text{rev}}, pk_{\text{loc},\text{rev}}, pk_{\text{right},\text{rev}}, pk_{\text{fundee},\text{rev}}\} \wedge "1"$ 
26: for all  $k \in \{m, \dots, l\} \setminus \{i\}$  do
27:    $\text{bridge}_{2,k} \leftarrow$ 
    $4/\{pk_{1,2,1}, pk_{i-1,2,1}, pk_{i+1,2,1}, pk_{n,2,1}\} \wedge "2, k"$ 
28:    $\text{revocation}_{2,k} \leftarrow$ 
    $4/\{pk_{\text{funder},\text{rev}}, pk_{\text{loc},\text{rev}}, pk_{\text{right},\text{rev}}, pk_{\text{fundee},\text{rev}}\} \wedge "2, k"$ 
29: end for
30: for all  $(k_1, k_2) \in \{m, \dots, i-1\} \times \{i+1, \dots, l\}$  do
31:    $\text{bridge}_{3,k_1,k_2} \leftarrow$ 
    $4/\{pk_{1,2,1}, pk_{i-1,2,1}, pk_{i+1,2,1}, pk_{n,2,1}\} \wedge "3, k_1, k_2"$ 
32:    $\text{revocation}_{3,k_1,k_2} \leftarrow$ 
    $4/\{pk_{\text{funder},\text{rev}}, pk_{\text{loc},\text{rev}}, pk_{\text{right},\text{rev}}, pk_{\text{fundee},\text{rev}}\} \wedge$ 
    $"3, k_1, k_2"$ 
33: end for
34: // After funding is complete,  $A_j$  has the signature of all
   other parties for all  $\text{all}_{j,k}$  and bridge inputs, but other
   parties do not have  $A_j$ 's signature for this input, therefore
   only  $A_j$  can publish it.
35: //  $\text{TX}_{i,j,k} := i$ -th move,  $j, k$  input interval start and end.
    $j, k$  unneeded for  $i = 1$ ,  $k$  unneeded for  $i = 2$ .
36:  $\text{TX}_1 \leftarrow \text{TX}$ :
37: inputs:
38:   ( $C_{\text{left}}$ ,  $\text{left\_old\_fund}$ ),
39:   ( $C_{\text{right}}$ ,  $\text{right\_old\_fund}$ )
40: outputs:
41:   ( $C_{\text{left}} - C_{\text{virt}}$ ,  $\text{left\_new\_fund}$ ),
42:   ( $C_{\text{right}} - C_{\text{virt}}$ ,  $\text{right\_new\_fund}$ ),
43:   ( $C_{\text{virt}}$ ,  $\text{refund}$ ),
44:   ( $C_{\text{virt}}$ ,
   (if  $(i-1 > 1)$  then  $\text{all}_{i-1,i}$  else False)
    $\vee$  (if  $(i+1 < n)$  then  $\text{all}_{i+1,i}$  else False)
    $\vee \text{revocation}_1$ 
    $\vee$ 

```

```

49:         if  $(i - 1 = 1 \wedge i + 1 = n)$  then  $\text{bridge}_1$ 
50:         else if  $(i - 1 > 1 \wedge i + 1 = n)$  then
     $\text{bridge}_1 + t_{i-1}$ 
51:         else if  $(i - 1 = 1 \wedge i + 1 < n)$  then
     $\text{bridge}_1 + t_{i+1}$ 
52:         else  $/*i - 1 > 1 \wedge i + 1 < n*/$ 
     $\text{bridge}_1 + \max(t_{i-1}, t_{i+1})$ 
53:     )
54: )
55:  $B_1 \leftarrow \text{TX}$ :
56:   input:
57:      $(c_{\text{virt}}, \text{bridge}_1)$ 
58:   output:
59:      $(c_{\text{virt}}, \text{revocation} \vee \text{virt\_fund})$ 
60:   if  $i = 2$  then
61:      $\text{TX}_{2,1} \leftarrow \text{TX}$ :
62:       inputs:
63:          $(c_{\text{virt}}, \text{all}_{2,1})$ ,
64:          $(c_{\text{right}}, \text{right\_old\_fund})$ 
65:       outputs:
66:          $(c_{\text{right}} - c_{\text{virt}}, \text{right\_new\_fund})$ ,
67:          $(c_{\text{virt}}, \text{refund})$ ,
68:          $(c_{\text{virt}},$ 
69:           (if  $(n > 3)$  then
     $(\text{all}_{3,2} \vee \text{revocation}_{2,1} \vee (\text{bridge}_{2,1} + t_3))$ 
    else  $\text{revocation}_{2,1} \vee \text{bridge}_{2,1})$ 
70:         )
71:       )
72:      $B_{2,1} \leftarrow \text{TX}$ :
73:       input:
74:          $(c_{\text{virt}}, \text{bridge}_{2,1})$ 
75:       output:
76:          $(c_{\text{virt}}, \text{revocation} \vee \text{virt\_fund})$ 
77:   end if
78:   if  $i = n - 1$  then
79:      $\text{TX}_{2,n} \leftarrow \text{TX}$ :
80:       inputs:
81:          $(c_{\text{left}}, \text{left\_old\_fund})$ ,
82:          $(c_{\text{virt}}, \text{all}_{n-1,n})$ 
83:       outputs:
84:          $(c_{\text{left}} - c_{\text{virt}}, \text{left\_new\_fund})$ ,
85:          $(c_{\text{virt}}, \text{refund})$ ,
86:          $(c_{\text{virt}},$ 
87:           (if  $(n - 2 > 1)$  then
     $(\text{all}_{n-2,n-1} \vee \text{revocation}_{2,n} \vee (\text{bridge}_{2,n} + t_{n-2}))$ 
    else  $\text{revocation}_{2,n} \vee \text{bridge}_{2,n})$ 
88:         )
89:       )
90:      $B_{2,n} \leftarrow \text{TX}$ :
91:       input:
92:          $(c_{\text{virt}}, \text{bridge}_{2,n})$ 
93:       output:
94:          $(c_{\text{virt}}, \text{revocation} \vee \text{virt\_fund})$ 
95:   end if
96:   for all  $k \in \{2, \dots, i - 1\}$  do //  $2(i - 2)$  txs
97:      $\text{TX}_{2,k} \leftarrow \text{TX}$ :
98:       inputs:
99:          $(c_{\text{virt}}, \text{all}_{i,k})$ ,
100:          $(c_{\text{right}}, \text{right\_old\_fund})$ 
101:       outputs:

```

```

102:          $(c_{\text{right}} - c_{\text{virt}}, \text{right\_new\_fund})$ ,
103:          $(c_{\text{virt}}, \text{refund})$ ,
104:          $(c_{\text{virt}},$ 
105:           (if  $(k - 1 > 1)$  then  $\text{all}_{k-1,i}$  else False)
106:            $\vee$  (if  $(i + 1 < n)$  then  $\text{all}_{i+1,k}$  else
    False)
107:            $\vee \text{revocation}_{2,k}$ 
108:            $\vee$  (
109:             if  $(k - 1 = 1 \wedge i + 1 = n)$  then
     $\text{bridge}_{2,k}$ 
110:             else if  $(k - 1 > 1 \wedge i + 1 = n)$  then
     $\text{bridge}_{2,k} + t_{k-1}$ 
111:             else if  $(k - 1 = 1 \wedge i + 1 < n)$  then
     $\text{bridge}_{2,k} + t_{i+1}$ 
112:             else  $/*k - 1 > 1 \wedge i + 1 < n*/$ 
     $\text{bridge}_{2,k} + \max(t_{k-1}, t_{i+1})$ 
113:           )
114:         )
115:       )
116:      $B_{2,k} \leftarrow \text{TX}$ :
117:       input:
118:          $(c_{\text{virt}}, \text{bridge}_{2,k})$ 
119:       output:
120:          $(c_{\text{virt}}, \text{revocation} \vee \text{virt\_fund})$ 
121:   end for
122:   for all  $k \in \{i + 1, \dots, n - 1\}$  do //  $2(n - i - 1)$  txs
123:      $\text{TX}_{2,k} \leftarrow \text{TX}$ :
124:       inputs:
125:          $(c_{\text{left}}, \text{left\_old\_fund})$ 
126:          $(c_{\text{virt}}, \text{all}_{i,k})$ ,
127:       outputs:
128:          $(c_{\text{left}} - c_{\text{virt}}, \text{left\_new\_fund})$ ,
129:          $(c_{\text{virt}}, \text{refund})$ ,
130:          $(c_{\text{virt}},$ 
131:           (if  $(i - 1 > 1)$  then  $\text{all}_{i-1,k}$  else False)
132:            $\vee$  (if  $(k + 1 < n)$  then  $\text{all}_{k+1,i}$  else
    False)
133:            $\vee \text{revocation}_{2,k}$ 
134:            $\vee$  (
135:             if  $(i - 1 = 1 \wedge k + 1 = n)$  then
     $\text{bridge}_{2,k}$ 
136:             else if  $(i - 1 > 1 \wedge k + 1 = n)$  then
     $\text{bridge}_{2,k} + t_{i-1}$ 
137:             else if  $(i - 1 = 1 \wedge k + 1 < n)$  then
     $\text{bridge}_{2,k} + t_{k+1}$ 
138:             else  $/*i - 1 > 1 \wedge k + 1 < n*/$ 
     $\text{bridge}_{2,k} + \max(t_{i-1}, t_{k+1})$ 
139:           )
140:         )
141:       )
142:      $B_{2,k} \leftarrow \text{TX}$ :
143:       input:
144:          $(c_{\text{virt}}, \text{bridge}_{2,k})$ 
145:       output:
146:          $(c_{\text{virt}}, \vee \text{revocation} \vee \text{virt\_fund})$ 
147:   end for
148:   for all  $(k_1, k_2) \in \{m, \dots, i - 1\} \times \{i + 1, \dots, l\}$  do //
     $(i - m) \cdot (l - i)$  txs
149:      $\text{TX}_{3,k_1,k_2} \leftarrow \text{TX}$ :
150:       inputs:
151:          $(c_{\text{virt}}, \text{all}_{i,k_1})$ ,
152:          $(c_{\text{virt}}, \text{all}_{i,k_2})$ 

```

```

153:      outputs:
154:          (cvirt, refund),
155:          (cvirt,
156:            (if (k1 - 1 > 1) then
157:              allk1-1, min(k2, n-1) else False)
158:              ∨ (if (k2 + 1 < n) then
159:                allk2+1, max(k1, 2) else False)
160:                ∨ revocation3, k1, k2
161:                ∨ (
162:                  if (k1 - 1 ≤ 1 ∧ k2 + 1 ≥ n) then
163:                    bridge3, k1, k2
164:                    else if (k1 - 1 > 1 ∧ k2 + 1 ≥ n)
165:                      then bridge3, k1, k2 + tk1-1
166:                      else if (k1 - 1 ≤ 1 ∧ k2 + 1 < n)
167:                        then bridge3, k1, k2 + tk2+1
168:                        else /*k1 - 1 > 1 ∧ k2 + 1 < n*/
169:                          bridge3, k1, k2 + max(tk1-1, tk2+1)
170:                    )
171:                  )
172:          B3, k1, k2 ← TX:
173:          input:
174:              (cvirt, bridge3, k1, k2)
175:          output:
176:              (cvirt, ∨ revocation ∨ virt_fund)
177:      end for
178:      return (
179:        TX1, B1,
180:        (TX2, k, B2, k)k ∈ {m, ..., l} \ {i},
181:        (TX3, k1, k2, B3, k1, k2)(k1, k2) ∈ {m, ..., i-1} × {i+1, ..., l}
182:      )

```

Figure 59

#### Process VIRT

```

1: // left and right refer to the two counterparties, with left
  being the one closer to the funder. Note difference with
  left/right meaning in VIRT.GETMIDTXS.
2: GETENDPOINTTX(i, n, cvirt, cleft, cright, pkleft, fund, old,
  pkright, fund, old, pkleft, fund, new, pkright, fund, new, pkleft, virt,
  pkright, virt, pkinterm, rev, pkendpoint, rev, (pkall, j)j ∈ [n], t):
3:   ensure i ∈ {1, n}
4:   ensure cleft ≥ cvirt // left party funds virtual channel
5:   ctot ← cleft + cright
6:   old_fund ← 2 / {pkleft, fund, old, pkright, fund, old}
7:   new_fund ← 2 / {pkleft, fund, new, pkright, fund, new} ∨
  2 / {pkleft, rev, pkright, rev}
8:   virt_fund ← 2 / {pkleft, virt, pkright, virt}
9:   revocation ← revocation1 ←
  2 / {pkinterm, rev, pkendpoint, rev}
10:  if i = 1 then // funder's tx
11:    all ← n / {pkall, 1, ..., pkall, n} ∧ "1"
12:    bridge ← 2 / {pkall, 2, pkall, n} ∧ "1" // We reuse
  the pkall, j keys to avoid new keys
13:  else // i = n, fundee's tx
14:    all ← n / {pkall, 1, ..., pkall, n} ∧ "n"
15:    bridge ← 2 / {pkall, 1, pkall, n-1} ∧ "1"
16:  end if

```

```

17: TX1 ← TX: // endpoints only have an "initiator" tx
18: input:
19:   (ctot, old_fund)
20: outputs:
21:   (ctot - cvirt, new_fund),
22:   (cvirt, all ∨ revocation1 ∨ (bridge + t))
23: B1 ← TX:
24: input:
25:   (cvirt, bridge)
26: output:
27:   (cvirt, revocation ∨ virt_fund)
28: return TX1, B1

```

Figure 60

#### Process VIRT.SIBLINGSIGS()

```

1: parse input as sigsbyLeft
2: if i = 2 then m ← 1 else m ← 2
3: if i = n - 1 then l ← n else l ← n - 1
4: (TXi, 1, Bi, 1, (TXi, 2, k, Bi, 2, k)k ∈ {m, ..., l} \ {i},
  (TXi, 3, k1, k2, Bi, 3, k1, k2)(k1, k2) ∈ {m, ..., i-1} × {i+1, ..., l}) ←
  VIRT.GETMIDTXS(i, n, cvirt, ci-1, right, ci, left, ci, right,
  ci+1, left, pki-1, right, fund, old, pki, left, fund, old,
  pki, right, fund, old, pki+1, left, fund, old, pki-1, fund, new,
  pki, fund, new, pki, fund, new, pki+1, fund, new, pkleft, virt,
  pkright, virt, pki, out, pk1, rev, pki-1, rev, pki, rev, pki+1, rev,
  pkn, rev, (pkh, j, k)h ∈ [n], j ∈ [n-1] \ {1}, k ∈ [n-1] \ {1, j},
  (pkh, 2, 1)h ∈ [n], (pkh, n-1, n)h ∈ [n], (th)h ∈ [n-1] \ {1})

5: // notation: sig(TX, pk) := sig with ANYPREVOUT flag such
  that VERIFY(TX, sig, pk) = True
6: ensure that the following signatures are present in sigsbyLeft
  and store them:
  • // (l - m) · (i - 1) signatures
7:   ∀k ∈ {m, ..., l} \ {i}, ∀j ∈ [i - 1]:
8:     sig(TXi, 2, k, pkj, i, k)
  • // 2 · (i - m) · (l - i) · (i - 1) signatures
9:   ∀k1 ∈ {m, ..., i - 1}, ∀k2 ∈ {i + 1, ..., l}, ∀j ∈ [i - 1]:
10:    sig(TXi, 3, k1, k2, pkj, i, k1), sig(TXi, 3, k1, k2, pkj, i, k2),
11:    sigstoRight ← sigsbyLeft

12: if i + 1 = n then // next hop is host_fundee
13:   TXn, 1, Bn, 1 ← VIRT.GETENDPOINTTX(n, n, cvirt,
  cn-1, right, cn, left, pkn-1, right, fund, old, pkn, left, fund, old,
  pkn-1, fund, new, pkn, fund, new, pkleft, virt, pkright, virt,
  pkn-1, rev, pkn, rev, (pkj, n-1, n)j ∈ [n], tn-1)
14:   add SIGN(Bn, 1, ski, 2, 1, ANYPREVOUT) to sigstoRight
15: end if
16: for all j ∈ {2, ..., n - 1} \ {i} do
17:   if j = 2 then m' ← 1 else m' ← 2
18:   if j = n - 1 then l' ← n else l' ← n - 1
19:   (TXj, 1, Bj, 1, (TXj, 2, k, Bj, 2, k)k ∈ {m', ..., l'} \ {i},
  (TXj, 3, k1, k2, Bj, 3, k1, k2)(k1, k2) ∈ {m', ..., i-1} × {i+1, ..., l'}) ←
  GETMIDTXS(j, n, cvirt, cj-1, right, cj, left, cj, right, cj+1, left,
  pkj-1, right, fund, old, pkj, left, fund, old, pkj, right, fund, old,

```

```

 $pk_{j+1, \text{left}, \text{fund}, \text{old}}, pk_{j-1, \text{fund}, \text{new}}, pk_{j, \text{fund}, \text{new}}, pk_{j, \text{fund}, \text{new}},$ 
 $pk_{j+1, \text{fund}, \text{new}}, pk_{\text{left}, \text{virt}}, pk_{\text{right}, \text{virt}}, pk_{j, \text{out}}, pk_{1, \text{rev}},$ 
 $pk_{j-1, \text{rev}}, pk_{j, \text{rev}}, pk_{j+1, \text{rev}}, pk_{n, \text{rev}},$ 
 $(pk_{k, p, s})_{k \in [n], p \in [n-1] \setminus \{1\}, s \in [n-1] \setminus \{1, p\}}, (pk_{k, 2, 1})_{k \in [n]},$ 
 $(pk_{k, n-1, n})_{k \in [n]}, (t_k)_{k \in [n-1] \setminus \{1\}}$ 
20:   if  $j = i - 1$  then
21:     ensure that the following signatures are present in
sigsbyLeft and store them:
    • // 2 signatures
22:       sig( $B_{i-1, 1}, pk_{1, 2, 1}$ ), sig( $B_{i-1, 1}, pk_{i-1, 2, 1}$ )
    • //  $2(l' - m')$  signatures
23:        $\forall k \in \{m', \dots, l'\} \setminus \{i\}$  :
24:         sig( $B_{i-1, 2, k}, pk_{1, 2, 1}$ ), sig( $B_{i-1, 2, k}, pk_{i-1, 2, 1}$ )
    • //  $2(i - m') \cdot (l' - i)$  signatures
25:        $\forall k_1 \in \{m', \dots, i-1\}, \forall k_2 \in \{i+1, \dots, l'\}$  :
26:         sig( $B_{i-1, 3, k_1, k_2}, pk_{1, 2, 1}$ ),
sig( $B_{i-1, 3, k_1, k_2}, pk_{i-1, 2, 1}$ )
27:     end if
28:     if  $j < i$  then sigs  $\leftarrow$  sigstoLeft else sigs  $\leftarrow$  sigstoRight
29:     if  $j \in \{i-1, i+1\}$  then
30:       add SIGN( $B_{j, 1}, sk_{i, 2, 1}$ , ANYPREVOUT) to sigs
31:     end if
32:     for all  $k \in \{m', \dots, l'\} \setminus \{j\}$  do
33:       add SIGN( $TX_{j, 2, k}, sk_{i, j, k}$ , ANYPREVOUT) to sigs
34:       if  $j \in \{i-1, i+1\}$  then
35:         add SIGN( $B_{j, 2, k}, sk_{i, 2, 1}$ , ANYPREVOUT) to sigs
36:       end if
37:     end for
38:     for all  $k_1 \in \{m', \dots, j-1\}, k_2 \in \{j+1, \dots, l'\}$  do
39:       add SIGN( $TX_{j, 3, k_1, k_2}, sk_{i, j, k_1}$ , ANYPREVOUT) to
sigs
40:       add SIGN( $TX_{j, 3, k_1, k_2}, sk_{i, j, k_2}$ , ANYPREVOUT) to
sigs
41:       if  $j \in \{i-1, i+1\}$  then
42:         add SIGN( $B_{j, 3, k_1, k_2}, sk_{i, 2, 1}$ , ANYPREVOUT) to
sigs
43:       end if
44:     end for
45:   end for

46: call  $\bar{P}.$ CIRCULATEVIRTUALSIGS(sigstoRight) and assign
returned value to sigsbyRight
47: output (VIRTUALSIGSBACK, sigstoLeft, sigsbyRight)

```

Figure 61

#### Process VIRT.INTERMEDIARYSIGS()

```

1: if  $i = 2$  then  $m \leftarrow 1$  else  $m \leftarrow 2$ 
2: if  $i = n - 1$  then  $l \leftarrow n$  else  $l \leftarrow n - 1$ 
3: ( $TX_{i, 1}, B_{i, 1}, (TX_{i, 2, k}, B_{i, 2, k})_{k \in \{m, \dots, l\} \setminus \{i\}},$ 
 $(TX_{i, 3, k_1, k_2}, B_{i, 3, k_1, k_2})_{(k_1, k_2) \in \{m, \dots, i-1\} \times \{i+1, \dots, l\}} \leftarrow$ 
VIRT.GETMIDTXS( $i, n, C_{\text{virt}}, C_{i-1, \text{right}}, C_{i, \text{left}}, C_{i, \text{right}},$ 
 $C_{i+1, \text{left}}, pk_{i-1, \text{right}, \text{fund}, \text{old}}, pk_{i, \text{left}, \text{fund}, \text{old}},$ 
 $pk_{i, \text{right}, \text{fund}, \text{old}}, pk_{i+1, \text{left}, \text{fund}, \text{old}}, pk_{i-1, \text{fund}, \text{new}},$ 
 $pk_{i, \text{fund}, \text{new}}, pk_{i, \text{fund}, \text{new}}, pk_{i+1, \text{fund}, \text{new}}, pk_{\text{left}, \text{virt}},$ 
 $pk_{\text{right}, \text{virt}}, pk_{i, \text{out}}, pk_{1, \text{rev}}, pk_{j-1, \text{rev}}, pk_{j, \text{rev}}, pk_{j+1, \text{rev}},$ 
 $pk_{n, \text{rev}}, (pk_{h, j, k})_{h \in [n], j \in [n-1] \setminus \{1\}, k \in [n-1] \setminus \{1, j\}},$ 

```

```

 $(pk_{h, 2, 1})_{h \in [n]}, (pk_{h, n-1, n})_{h \in [n]}, (t_h)_{h \in [n-1] \setminus \{1\}})$ 
4: // not verifying our signatures in sigsbyLeft, our (trusted)
sibling will do that
5: input (VIRTUALSIGSFORWARD, sigsbyLeft) to sibling
6: VIRT.SIBLINGSIGS()
7: sigstoLeft  $\leftarrow$  sigsbyRight + sigstoLeft
8: if  $i = 2$  then // previous hop is host_funder
9:    $TX_{1, 1}, B_{1, 1} \leftarrow$  VIRT.GETENDPOINTTX(1,  $n, C_{\text{virt}},$ 
 $C_{1, \text{right}}, C_{2, \text{left}}, pk_{1, \text{right}, \text{fund}, \text{old}}, pk_{2, \text{left}, \text{fund}, \text{old}},$ 
 $pk_{1, \text{fund}, \text{new}}, pk_{2, \text{fund}, \text{new}}, pk_{\text{left}, \text{virt}}, pk_{\text{right}, \text{virt}}, pk_{2, \text{rev}},$ 
 $pk_{1, \text{rev}}, (pk_{j, 2, 1})_{j \in [n]}, t_2)$ 
10:   add SIGN( $B_{1, 1}, sk_{i, 2, 1}$ , ANYPREVOUT) to sigstoLeft
11: end if
12: return sigstoLeft

```

Figure 62

#### Process VIRT.HOSTFUNDEESIGS()

```

1:  $TX_{n, 1}, B_{n, 1} \leftarrow$  VIRT.GETENDPOINTTX( $n, n, C_{\text{virt}},$ 
 $C_{n-1, \text{right}}, C_{n, \text{left}}, pk_{n-1, \text{right}, \text{fund}, \text{old}}, pk_{n, \text{right}, \text{fund}, \text{old}},$ 
 $pk_{n-1, \text{fund}, \text{new}}, pk_{n, \text{fund}, \text{new}}, pk_{\text{left}, \text{virt}}, pk_{\text{right}, \text{virt}},$ 
 $pk_{n-1, \text{rev}}, pk_{n, \text{rev}}, (pk_{j, n-1, n})_{j \in [n]}, t_{n-1})$ 
2: ensure that sig( $B_{n, 1}, pk_{1, 2, 1}$ ), sig( $B_{n, 1}, pk_{n-1, 2, 1}$ ) are
present in sigsbyLeft and store them
3: sigstoLeft  $\leftarrow \emptyset$ 
4: for all  $j \in [n-1] \setminus \{1\}$  do
5:   if  $j = 2$  then  $m \leftarrow 1$  else  $m \leftarrow 2$ 
6:   if  $j = n - 1$  then  $l \leftarrow n$  else  $l \leftarrow n - 1$ 
7:   ( $TX_{j, 1}, B_{j, 1}, (TX_{j, 2, k}, B_{j, 2, k})_{k \in \{m, \dots, l\} \setminus \{j\}},$ 
 $(TX_{j, 3, k_1, k_2}, B_{j, 3, k_1, k_2})_{(k_1, k_2) \in \{m, \dots, j-1\} \times \{j+1, \dots, l\}} \leftarrow$ 
VIRT.GETMIDTXS( $j, n, C_{\text{virt}}, C_{j-1, \text{right}}, C_{j, \text{left}}, C_{j, \text{right}},$ 
 $C_{j+1, \text{left}}, pk_{j-1, \text{right}, \text{fund}, \text{old}}, pk_{j, \text{left}, \text{fund}, \text{old}},$ 
 $pk_{j, \text{right}, \text{fund}, \text{old}}, pk_{j+1, \text{left}, \text{fund}, \text{old}}, pk_{j-1, \text{fund}, \text{new}},$ 
 $pk_{j, \text{fund}, \text{new}}, pk_{j, \text{fund}, \text{new}}, pk_{j+1, \text{fund}, \text{new}}, pk_{\text{left}, \text{virt}},$ 
 $pk_{\text{right}, \text{virt}}, pk_{j, \text{out}}, pk_{1, \text{rev}}, pk_{j-1, \text{rev}}, pk_{j, \text{rev}}, pk_{j+1, \text{rev}},$ 
 $pk_{n, \text{rev}}, (pk_{h, s, k})_{h \in [n], s \in [n-1] \setminus \{1\}, k \in [n-1] \setminus \{1, s\}},$ 
 $(pk_{h, 2, 1})_{h \in [n]}, (pk_{h, n-1, n})_{h \in [n]}, (t_h)_{h \in [n-1] \setminus \{1\}})$ 
8:   for all  $k \in \{m, \dots, l\} \setminus \{j\}$  do
9:     ensure that sig( $B_{j, 2, k}, pk_{1, 2, 1}$ ), sig( $B_{j, 2, k}, pk_{n-1, 2, 1}$ )
are present in sigsbyLeft and store them
10:    add SIGN( $TX_{j, 2, k}, sk_{n, j, k}$ , ANYPREVOUT) to
sigstoLeft
11:    add SIGN( $B_{j, 2, k}, sk_{n, 2, 1}$ , ANYPREVOUT) to
sigstoLeft
12:   end for
13:   for all  $k_1 \in \{m, \dots, j-1\}, k_2 \in \{j+1, \dots, l\}$  do
14:     ensure that sig( $B_{j, 3, k_1, k_2}, pk_{1, 2, 1}$ ),
sig( $B_{j, 3, k_1, k_2}, pk_{n-1, 2, 1}$ ) are present in sigsbyLeft and store
them
15:     add SIGN( $TX_{j, 3, k_1, k_2}, sk_{n, j, k_1}$ , ANYPREVOUT) to
sigstoLeft
16:     add SIGN( $TX_{j, 3, k_1, k_2}, sk_{n, j, k_2}$ , ANYPREVOUT) to
sigstoLeft
17:     add SIGN( $B_{j, 3, k_1, k_2}, sk_{n, 2, 1}$ , ANYPREVOUT) to
sigstoLeft
18:   end for
19: end for
20: return sigstoLeft

```

Figure 63



**Process VIRT.HOSTFUNDERSIGS()**

```

1: sigstoRight ← ∅
2: for all  $j \in [n-1] \setminus \{1\}$  do
3:   if  $j = 2$  then  $m \leftarrow 1$  else  $m \leftarrow 2$ 
4:   if  $j = n-1$  then  $l \leftarrow n$  else  $l \leftarrow n-1$ 
5:    $(TX_{j,1}, B_{j,1}, (TX_{j,2,k}, B_{j,2,k})_{k \in \{m, \dots, l\} \setminus \{j\}},$ 
 $(TX_{j,3,k_1,k_2}, B_{j,3,k_1,k_2})_{(k_1,k_2) \in \{m, \dots, j-1\} \times \{j+1, \dots, l\}} \leftarrow$ 
 $\text{VIRT.GETMIDTXS}(j, n, C_{\text{virt}}, C_{j-1,\text{right}}, C_{j,\text{left}}, C_{j,\text{right}},$ 
 $C_{j+1,\text{left}}, pk_{j-1,\text{right},\text{fund},\text{old}}, pk_{j,\text{left},\text{fund},\text{old}},$ 
 $pk_{j,\text{right},\text{fund},\text{old}}, pk_{j+1,\text{left},\text{fund},\text{old}}, pk_{j-1,\text{fund},\text{new}},$ 
 $pk_{j,\text{fund},\text{new}}, pk_{j,\text{fund},\text{new}}, pk_{j+1,\text{fund},\text{new}}, pk_{\text{left},\text{virt}},$ 
 $pk_{\text{right},\text{virt}}, pk_{j,\text{out}}, pk_{1,\text{rev}}, pk_{j-1,\text{rev}}, pk_{j,\text{rev}}, pk_{j+1,\text{rev}},$ 
 $pk_{n,\text{rev}}, (pk_{h,s,k})_{h \in [n], s \in [n-1] \setminus \{1\}, k \in [n-1] \setminus \{1,s\}},$ 
 $(pk_{h,2,1})_{h \in [n]}, (pk_{h,n-1,n})_{h \in [n]}, (t_h)_{h \in [n-1] \setminus \{1\}})$ 
6:   for all  $k \in \{m, \dots, l\} \setminus \{j\}$  do
7:     add SIGN( $TX_{j,2,k}, sk_{1,j,k}, \text{ANYPREVOUT}$ ) to
 $\text{sigs}_{\text{toRight}}$ 
8:     add SIGN( $B_{j,2,k}, sk_{1,2,1}, \text{ANYPREVOUT}$ ) to
 $\text{sigs}_{\text{toRight}}$ 
9:   end for
10:  for all  $k_1 \in \{m, \dots, j-1\}, k_2 \in \{j+1, \dots, l\}$  do
11:    add SIGN( $TX_{j,3,k_1,k_2}, sk_{1,j,k_1}, \text{ANYPREVOUT}$ ) to
 $\text{sigs}_{\text{toRight}}$ 
12:    add SIGN( $TX_{j,3,k_1,k_2}, sk_{1,j,k_2}, \text{ANYPREVOUT}$ ) to
 $\text{sigs}_{\text{toRight}}$ 
13:    add SIGN( $B_{j,3,k_1,k_2}, sk_{1,2,1}, \text{ANYPREVOUT}$ ) to
 $\text{sigs}_{\text{toRight}}$ 
14:  end for
15: end for
16: call VIRT.CIRCULATEVIRTUALSIGS( $\text{sigs}_{\text{toRight}}$ ) of  $\bar{P}$  and
assign output to  $\text{sigs}_{\text{byRight}}$ 
17:  $TX_{1,1}, B_{1,1} \leftarrow \text{VIRT.GETENDPOINTTX}(1, n, C_{\text{virt}}, C_{1,\text{right}},$ 
 $C_{2,\text{left}}, pk_{1,\text{right},\text{fund},\text{old}}, pk_{2,\text{left},\text{fund},\text{old}}, pk_{1,\text{fund},\text{new}},$ 
 $pk_{2,\text{fund},\text{new}}, pk_{\text{left},\text{virt}}, pk_{\text{right},\text{virt}}, pk_{2,\text{rev}}, pk_{1,\text{rev}},$ 
 $(pk_{j,2,1})_{j \in [n]}, t_2)$ 
18: ensure that  $\text{sig}(B_{1,1}, pk_{2,2,1}), \text{sig}(B_{1,1}, pk_{n,2,1})$  are present
in  $\text{sigs}_{\text{byRight}}$  and store them
19: for all  $j \in [n-1] \setminus \{1\}$  do
20:   if  $j = 2$  then  $m \leftarrow 1$  else  $m \leftarrow 2$ 
21:   if  $j = n-1$  then  $l \leftarrow n$  else  $l \leftarrow n-1$ 
22:   for all  $k \in \{m, \dots, l\} \setminus \{j\}$  do
23:     ensure that  $\text{sig}(B_{j,2,k}, pk_{2,2,1}), \text{sig}(B_{j,2,k}, pk_{n,2,1})$ 
are present in  $\text{sigs}_{\text{byRight}}$  and store them
24:   end for
25:   for all  $k_1 \in \{m, \dots, j-1\}, k_2 \in \{j+1, \dots, l\}$  do
26:     ensure that  $\text{sig}(B_{j,3,k_1,k_2}, pk_{2,2,1}),$ 
 $\text{sig}(B_{j,3,k_1,k_2}, pk_{n,2,1})$  are present in  $\text{sigs}_{\text{byRight}}$  and store
them
27:   end for
28: end for
29: return (OK)

```

Figure 64

**Process VIRT.CIRCULATEVIRTUALSIGS( $\text{sigs}_{\text{byLeft}}$ )**

```

1: if  $1 < i < n$  then // we are not host_funder nor
host_fundee

```

```

2:   return VIRT.INTERMEDIARYSIGS()
3: else if  $i = 1$  then // we are host_funder
4:   return VIRT.HOSTFUNDERSIGS()
5: else if  $i = n$  then // we are host_fundee
6:   return VIRT.HOSTFUNDEESIGS()
7: end if // it is always  $1 \leq i \leq n$  - c.f. Fig. 57, l. 12 and l. 37

```

Figure 65

**Process VIRT.CIRCULATEFUNDINGSIGS( $\text{sigs}_{\text{byLeft}}$ )**

```

1: if  $1 < i < n$  then // we are not endpoint
2:   if  $i = 2$  then  $m \leftarrow 1$  else  $m \leftarrow 2$ 
3:   if  $i = n-1$  then  $l \leftarrow n$  else  $l \leftarrow n-1$ 
4:   ensure that the following signatures are present in
 $\text{sigs}_{\text{byLeft}}$  and store them:
   • // 1 signature
5:      $\text{sig}(TX_{i,1}, pk_{i-1,\text{right},\text{fund},\text{old}})$ 
   • //  $n-3 + \chi_{i=2} + \chi_{i=n-1}$  signatures
6:      $\forall k \in \{m, \dots, l\} \setminus \{i\}$ 
7:        $\text{sig}(TX_{i,2,k}, pk_{i-1,\text{right},\text{fund},\text{old}})$ 
8:   input (VIRTUAL BASE SIG FORWARD,  $\text{sigs}_{\text{byLeft}}$ ) to
sibling
9:   extract and store  $\text{sig}(TX_{i,1}, pk_{i-1,\text{right},\text{fund},\text{old}})$  and
 $\forall k \in \{m, \dots, l\} \setminus \{i\} \text{ sig}(TX_{i,2,k}, pk_{i-1,\text{right},\text{fund},\text{old}})$  from
 $\text{sigs}_{\text{byLeft}}$  // same signatures as sibling
10:   $\text{sigs}_{\text{toRight}} \leftarrow$ 
 $\{\text{SIGN}(TX_{i+1,1}, sk_{i,\text{right},\text{fund},\text{old}}, \text{ANYPREVOUT})\}$ 
11:  if  $i+1 < n$  then
12:    if  $i+1 = n-1$  then  $l' \leftarrow n$  else  $l' \leftarrow n-1$ 
13:    for all  $k \in \{2, \dots, l'\}$  do
14:      add SIGN( $TX_{i+1,2,k}, sk_{i,\text{right},\text{fund},\text{old}},$ 
 $\text{ANYPREVOUT}$ ) to  $\text{sigs}_{\text{toRight}}$ 
15:    end for
16:  else //  $i+1 = n$ 
17:    add SIGN( $TX_{n,1}, sk_{i,\text{right},\text{fund},\text{old}}, \text{ANYPREVOUT}$ ) to
 $\text{sigs}_{\text{toRight}}$ 
18:  end if
19:  call VIRT.CIRCULATEFUNDINGSIGS( $\text{sigs}_{\text{toRight}}$ ) of  $\bar{P}$ 
and assign returned values to  $\text{sigs}_{\text{byRight}}$ 
20:  ensure that the following signatures are present in
 $\text{sigs}_{\text{byRight}}$  and store them:
   • // 1 signature
21:      $\text{sig}(TX_{i,1}, pk_{i+1,\text{left},\text{fund},\text{old}})$ 
   • //  $n-3 + \chi_{i=2} + \chi_{i=n-1}$  signatures
22:      $\forall k \in \{m, \dots, l\} \setminus \{i\}$ 
23:        $\text{sig}(TX_{i,2,k}, pk_{i+1,\text{right},\text{fund},\text{old}})$ 
24:  output (VIRTUAL BASE SIG BACK,  $\text{sigs}_{\text{byRight}}$ )
25:  extract and store  $\text{sig}(TX_{i,1}, pk_{i+1,\text{right},\text{fund},\text{old}})$  and
 $\forall k \in \{m, \dots, l\} \setminus \{i\} \text{ sig}(TX_{i,2,k}, pk_{i+1,\text{right},\text{fund},\text{old}})$  from
 $\text{sigs}_{\text{byRight}}$  // same signatures as sibling
26:   $\text{sig}_{\text{toLeft}} \leftarrow$ 
 $\{\text{SIGN}(TX_{i-1,1}, sk_{i,\text{left},\text{fund},\text{old}}, \text{ANYPREVOUT})\}$ 
27:  if  $i-1 > 1$  then
28:    if  $i-1 = 2$  then  $m' \leftarrow 1$  else  $m' \leftarrow 2$ 
29:    for all  $k \in \{m', \dots, n-1\}$  do
30:      add SIGN( $TX_{i-1,2,k}, sk_{i,\text{left},\text{fund},\text{old}},$ 
 $\text{ANYPREVOUT}$ ) to  $\text{sigs}_{\text{toLeft}}$ 

```

```

31:   end for
32:   else //  $i - 1 = 1$ 
33:     add SIGN(TX1,1, ski,left,fund,old, ANYPREVOUT) to
    sigstoLeft
34:   end if
35:   return sigstoLeft
36: else if  $i = 1$  then // we are host_funder
37:   sigstoRight ←
    {SIGN(TX2,1, sk1,right,fund,old, ANYPREVOUT)}
38:   if  $2 = n - 1$  then  $l' \leftarrow n$  else  $l' \leftarrow n - 1$ 
39:   for all  $k \in \{3, \dots, l'\}$  do
40:     add SIGN(TX2,2,k, sk1,right,fund,old, ANYPREVOUT)
    to sigstoRight
41:   end for
42:   call VIRT.CIRCULATEFUNDINGSIGS(sigstoRight) of  $\bar{P}$ 
    and assign returned value to sigsbyRight
43:   ensure that sig(TX1,1, pk2,left,fund,old) is present in
    sigsbyRight and store it
44:   return (OK)
45: else if  $i = n$  then // we are host_fundee
46:   ensure sig(TXn,1, pkn-1,right,fund,old) is present in
    sigsbyLeft and store it
47:   sigstoLeft ←
    {SIGN(TXn-1,1, skn,left,fund,old, ANYPREVOUT)}
48:   if  $n - 1 = 2$  then  $m' \leftarrow 1$  else  $m' \leftarrow 2$ 
49:   for all  $k \in \{m', \dots, n - 2\}$  do
50:     add SIGN(TXn-1,2,k, skn,left,fund,old,
    ANYPREVOUT) to sigstoLeft
51:   end for
52:   return sigstoLeft
53: end if // it is always  $1 \leq i \leq n$  - c.f. Fig. 57, l. 12 and l. 37

```

Figure 66

#### Process VIRT.CIRCULATEREVOCATIONS(revoc\_by\_prev)

```

1: if revoc_by_prev is given as argument then // we are
    not host_funder
2:   ensure
    guest.PROCESSREMOTEREVOCATION(revoc_by_prev)
    returns (OK)
3: else // we are host_funder
4:   revoc_for_next ← guest.REVOKEPREVIOUS()
5:   input (READ) to  $\mathcal{G}_{\text{Ledger}}$  and assign output to  $\Sigma$ 
6:   last_poll ←  $|\Sigma|$ 
7:   call
    VIRT.CIRCULATEREVOCATIONS(revoc_for_next) of  $\bar{P}$ 
    and assign returned value to revoc_by_next
8:   ensure
    guest.PROCESSREMOTEREVOCATION(revoc_by_next)
    returns (OK) // If the "ensure" fails, the opening process
    freezes, this is intentional. The channel can still close via
    (FORCECLOSE)
9:   return (OK)
10: end if
11: if we have a sibling then // we are not host_fundee
    nor host_funder
12:   input (VIRTUAL REVOCATION FORWARD) to sibling
13:   revoc_for_next ← guest.REVOKEPREVIOUS()
14:   input (READ) to  $\mathcal{G}_{\text{Ledger}}$  and assign output to  $\Sigma$ 
15:   last_poll ←  $|\Sigma|$ 
16:   call

```

```

VIRT.CIRCULATEREVOCATIONS(revoc_for_next) of  $\bar{P}$ 
and assign output to revoc_by_next
17: ensure
    guest.PROCESSREMOTEREVOCATION(revoc_by_next)
    returns (OK)
18:   output (HOSTS READY,  $t_i$ ) to guest and expect reply
    (HOST ACK)
19:   output (VIRTUAL REVOCATION BACK)
20: end if
21: revoc_for_prev ← guest.REVOKEPREVIOUS()
22: if  $1 < i < n$  then // we are intermediary
23:   output (HOSTS READY,  $t_i$ ) to guest and expect reply
    (HOST ACK) //  $p$  is every how many blocks we have to
    check the chain
24: else // we are host_fundee, case of host_funder
    covered earlier
25:   output (HOSTS READY,  $p + \sum_{j=2}^{n-1} (s - 1 + t_j)$ ) to guest
    and expect reply (HOST ACK)
26: end if
27: return revoc_for_prev

```

Figure 67

#### Process VIRT - poll

```

1: On input (CHECK FOR LATERAL CLOSE) by  $R \in \{\text{guest},
    \text{funder}, \text{fundee}\}$ :
2:   input (READ) to  $\mathcal{G}_{\text{Ledger}}$  and assign output to  $\Sigma$ 
3:    $k_1 \leftarrow 0$ 
4:   if TXi-1,1 is defined and TXi-1,1  $\in \Sigma$  then
5:      $k_1 \leftarrow i - 1$ 
6:   end if
7:   for all  $k \in [i - 2]$  do
8:     if TXi-1,2,k is defined and TXi-1,2,k  $\in \Sigma$  then
9:        $k_1 \leftarrow k$ 
10:    end if
11:  end for
12:   $k_2 \leftarrow 0$ 
13:  if TXi+1,1 is defined and TXi+1,1  $\in \Sigma$  then
14:     $k_2 \leftarrow i + 1$ 
15:  end if
16:  for all  $k \in \{i + 2, \dots, n\}$  do
17:    if TXi+1,2,k is defined and TXi+1,2,k  $\in \Sigma$  then
18:       $k_2 \leftarrow k$ 
19:    end if
20:  end for
21:  last_poll ←  $|\Sigma|$ 
22:  if  $k_1 > 0 \vee k_2 > 0$  then // at least one neighbour has
    published its TX
23:    ignore all messages except for (CHECK IF CLOSING)
    by  $R$ 
24:    State ← CLOSING
25:    sigs ←  $\emptyset$ 
26:  end if
27:  if  $k_1 > 0 \wedge k_2 > 0$  then // both neighbours have
    published their TXs
28:    add (sig(TXi,3,k1,k2,pkp,i,k1)))p $\in$ [n]\{i} to sigs
29:    add (sig(TXi,3,k1,k2,pkp,i,k2)))p $\in$ [n]\{i} to sigs
30:    add SIGN(TXi,3,k1,k2,ski,i,k1, ANYPREVOUT) to
    sigs
31:    add SIGN(TXi,3,k1,k2,ski,i,k2, ANYPREVOUT) to

```

```

sigs
32:   input (SUBMIT,  $TX_{i,3,k_1,k_2}$ , sigs) to  $\mathcal{G}_{\text{Ledger}}$ 
33:   else if  $k_1 > 0$  then // only left neighbour has published
    its TX
34:     add ( $\text{sig}(TX_{i,2,k_1}, pk_{p,i,k_1})$ ) $_{p \in [n] \setminus \{i\}}$  to sigs
35:     add  $\text{SIGN}(TX_{i,2,k_1}, sk_{i,i,k_1}, \text{ANYPREVOUT})$  to sigs
36:     add  $\text{SIGN}(TX_{i,2,k_1}, sk_{i,\text{left},\text{fund},\text{old}}, \text{ANYPREVOUT})$ 
    to sigs
37:   input (SUBMIT,  $TX_{i,2,k_1}$ , sigs) to  $\mathcal{G}_{\text{Ledger}}$ 
38:   else if  $k_2 > 0$  then // only right neighbour has published
    its TX
39:     add ( $\text{sig}(TX_{i,2,k_2}, pk_{p,i,k_2})$ ) $_{p \in [n] \setminus \{i\}}$  to sigs
40:     add  $\text{SIGN}(TX_{i,2,k_2}, sk_{i,i,k_2}, \text{ANYPREVOUT})$  to sigs
41:     add  $\text{SIGN}(TX_{i,2,k_2}, sk_{i,\text{right},\text{fund},\text{old}}, \text{ANYPREVOUT})$ 
    to sigs
42:   input (SUBMIT,  $TX_{i,2,k_2}$ , sigs) to  $\mathcal{G}_{\text{Ledger}}$ 
43:   end if

44: On input (CHECK FOR REVOKED) by
     $R \in \{\text{guest}, \text{funder}, \text{fundee}\}$ :
45:   input (READ) to  $\mathcal{G}_{\text{Ledger}}$  and assign output to  $\Sigma$ 
46:   if  $TX_{i-1,1} \in \Sigma \vee \exists k \in \mathbb{N} : TX_{i-1,2,k} \in \Sigma$  then // left
    counterparty maliciously published old virtual tx
47:     if  $\exists k \in \mathbb{N} : TX_{i-1,2,k} \in \Sigma$  then // exactly one of the
    two pairs is valid. That is OK
48:      $(R_a, sk_a, R_b, sk_b) \leftarrow (R_{i-1,2,k}, sk_{i,2,1}, R_{\text{loc},\text{left},\text{virt}}, sk_{i,\text{rev}})$ 
49:     else
50:      $(R_a, sk_a, R_b, sk_b) \leftarrow (R_{i-1,1}, sk_{i,2,1}, R_{\text{loc},\text{left},\text{virt}}, sk_{i,\text{rev}})$ 
51:     end if
52:     input (SUBMIT,  $(R_a, R_b, R_{\text{loc},\text{left},\text{virt}}, R_{\text{loc},\text{left},\text{fund}})$ ,
     $(\text{SIGN}(R_a, sk_a), (\text{SIGN}(R_b, sk_b), \text{SIGN}(R_{\text{loc},\text{left},\text{virt}}, sk_{i,\text{rev}}),$ 
     $\text{SIGN}(R_{\text{loc},\text{left},\text{fund}}, sk_{i,\text{rev}})))$  to  $\mathcal{G}_{\text{Ledger}}$ 
53:     end if
54:     if  $TX_{i+1,1} \in \Sigma \vee \exists k \in \mathbb{N} : TX_{i+1,2,k} \in \Sigma$  then // right
    counterparty maliciously published old virtual tx
55:     input (SUBMIT,  $(R_{\text{loc},\text{right},\text{virt}}, R_{\text{loc},\text{right},\text{fund}})$ ,
     $(\text{SIGN}(R_{\text{loc},\text{right},\text{virt}}, sk_{i,\text{rev}}), \text{SIGN}(R_{\text{loc},\text{right},\text{fund}}, sk_{i,\text{rev}})))$ 
    to  $\mathcal{G}_{\text{Ledger}}$ 
56:     end if
57:     output (NOTHING REVOKED) to  $R$ 

```

Figure 68

**Process VIRT – On input (FORCECLOSE) by  $R$ :**

```

1: // At most one of funder, fundee is defined
2: ensure  $R \in \{\text{guest}, \text{funder}, \text{fundee}\}$ 
3: if  $\text{State} = \text{CLOSED}$  then output (CLOSED) to  $R$ 
4: if  $\text{State} = \text{GUEST PUNISHED}$  then output (GUEST
    PUNISHED) to  $R$ 
5: ensure  $\text{State} \in \{\text{OPEN}, \text{CLOSING}\}$ 
6: if  $\text{host}_P \neq \mathcal{G}_{\text{Ledger}}$  then //  $\text{host}_P$  is a VIRT
7:   ignore all messages except for output (CLOSED) by
     $\text{host}_P$ . Also relay to  $\text{host}_P$  any (CHECK IF CLOSING) or
    (FORCECLOSE) input received
8:   input (FORCECLOSE) to  $\text{host}_P$ 
9: end if
10: // if we have a  $\text{host}_P$ , continue from here on output
    (CLOSED) by it
11: send (READ) to  $\mathcal{G}_{\text{Ledger}}$  as  $R$  and assign reply to  $\Sigma$ 

```

```

12: if  $i \in \{1, n\} \wedge (TX_{(i-1)+\frac{2}{n-1}(n-i),1} \in \Sigma \vee \exists k \in [n] :$ 
     $TX_{(i-1)+\frac{2}{n-1}(n-i),2,k} \in \Sigma)$  then // we are an endpoint and
    our counterparty has closed – 1st subscript of TX is 2 if
     $i = 1$  and  $n - 1$  if  $i = n$ 
13:   ignore all messages except for (CHECK IF CLOSING) and
    (FORCECLOSE) by  $R$ 
14:    $\text{State} \leftarrow \text{CLOSING}$ 
15:   give up execution token // control goes to  $\mathcal{E}$ 
16: end if
17: let  $TX_p$  be the unique transaction among  $TX_{i,1}$ ,
     $(TX_{i,2,k})_{k \in [n]}$ ,  $(TX_{i,3,k_1,k_2})_{k_1,k_2 \in [n]}$  that can be appended
    to  $\Sigma$  in a valid way // ignore invalid subscript combinations
18: let sigs be the set of stored signatures that sign  $TX_p$ 
19: add  $\text{SIGN}(TX_p, sk_{i,\text{left},\text{fund},\text{old}}, \text{ANYPREVOUT})$ ,  $\text{SIGN}(TX_p,$ 
     $sk_{i,\text{right},\text{fund},\text{old}}, \text{ANYPREVOUT})$ ,
     $(\text{SIGN}(TX_p, sk_{i,j,k}, \text{ANYPREVOUT}))_{j,k \in [n]}$  to sigs //
    ignore invalid signatures
20: ignore all messages except for (CHECK IF CLOSING) by  $R$ 
21:  $\text{State} \leftarrow \text{CLOSING}$ 
22: send (SUBMIT,  $TX_p$ , sigs) to  $\mathcal{G}_{\text{Ledger}}$ 

```

Figure 69

**Process VIRT – On input (CHECK IF CLOSING) by  $R$ :**

```

1: ensure  $\text{State} = \text{CLOSING}$ 
2: ensure  $R \in \{\text{guest}, \text{funder}, \text{fundee}\}$ 
3: send (READ) to  $\mathcal{G}_{\text{Ledger}}$  as  $R$  and assign reply to  $\Sigma$ 
4: if  $i = 1$  then // we are  $\text{host\_funder}$ 
5:   ensure that there exists an output with  $c_P + c_{\bar{P}} - c_{\text{virt}}$ 
    coins and a  $2/\{pk_{1,\text{fund},\text{new}}, pk_{2,\text{fund},\text{new}}\}$  spending method
    with expired/non-existent timelock in  $\Sigma$  // new base funding
    output
6:   ensure that there either exists an output with  $c_{\text{virt}}$  coins
    and a  $2/\{pk_{\text{left},\text{virt}}, pk_{\text{right},\text{virt}}\}$  spending method with
    expired/non-existent timelock in  $\Sigma$  /*virtual funding output
    by a “bridge” tx*/ or a  $\text{bridge}_p$  output. In the latter case,
    collect all  $B_p$ ’s signatures in sigs, add  $\text{SIGN}(B_p, sk_{1,2,1},$ 
     $\text{ANYPREVOUT})$  (or, if  $p = n, 1$ ,  $\text{SIGN}(B_p, sk_{1,n-1,n},$ 
     $\text{ANYPREVOUT})$  instead) to sigs, send (SUBMIT,  $B_p,$ 
    sigs) to  $\mathcal{G}_{\text{Ledger}}$  and keep waiting here for (CHECK IF
    CLOSING) by  $R$  until  $B_p$  is in  $\Sigma$  returned by sending
    (READ) to  $\mathcal{G}_{\text{Ledger}}$ .
7: else if  $i = n$  then // we are  $\text{host\_fundee}$ 
8:   ensure that there exists an output with  $c_P + c_{\bar{P}} - c_{\text{virt}}$ 
    coins and a  $2/\{pk_{n-1,\text{fund},\text{new}}, pk_{n,\text{fund},\text{new}}\}$  spending
    method with expired/non-existent timelock in  $\Sigma$  // new base
    funding output
9:   ensure that there either exists an output with  $c_{\text{virt}}$  coins
    and a  $2/\{pk_{\text{left},\text{virt}}, pk_{\text{right},\text{virt}}\}$  spending method with
    expired/non-existent timelock in  $\Sigma$  /*virtual funding output
    by a “bridge” tx*/ or a  $\text{bridge}_p$  output. In the latter case,
    collect all  $B_p$ ’s signatures in sigs, add  $\text{SIGN}(B_p, sk_{1,2,1},$ 
     $\text{ANYPREVOUT})$  (or, if  $p = n, 1$ ,  $\text{SIGN}(B_p, sk_{1,n-1,n},$ 
     $\text{ANYPREVOUT})$  instead) to sigs, send (SUBMIT,  $B_p,$ 
    sigs) to  $\mathcal{G}_{\text{Ledger}}$  and keep waiting here for (CHECK IF
    CLOSING) by  $R$  until  $B_p$  is in  $\Sigma$  returned by sending
    (READ) to  $\mathcal{G}_{\text{Ledger}}$ .
10: else // we are intermediary
11:   if  $\text{side} = \text{“left”}$  then  $j \leftarrow i - 1$  else  $j \leftarrow i + 1$  // side
    is defined for all intermediaries – c.f. Fig. 57, l. 11

```

```

12: ensure that there exists an output with  $c_P + c_{\bar{P}} - c_{\text{virt}}$ 
    coins and a  $2/\{pk_{i,\text{fund,new}}, pk_{j,\text{fund,new}}\}$  spending method
    with expired/non-existent timelock in  $\Sigma$ 
13: ensure that there either exists an output with  $c_{\text{virt}}$  coins
    and a  $pk_{i,\text{out}}$  spending method with expired/non-existent
    timelock in  $\Sigma$  /*virtual funding output by a “bridge” tx*/ or
    a  $bridge_{i-1,p}$  output. In the latter case, collect all
     $B_{i-1,p}$ 's signatures in  $\text{sig}_s$ , add  $\text{SIGN}(B_{i-1,p}, sk_{1,2,1},$ 
     $\text{ANYPREVOUT})$  (or, if  $i-1, p = n, 1$ ,  $\text{SIGN}(B_{i-1,p},$ 
     $sk_{1,n-1,n}, \text{ANYPREVOUT})$  instead) to  $\text{sig}_s$ , send (SUBMIT,
     $B_{i-1,p}, \text{sig}_s$ ) to  $\mathcal{G}_{\text{Ledger}}$  and keep waiting here for
    (CHECK IF CLOSING) by  $R$  until  $B_{i-1,p}$  is in  $\Sigma$  returned by
    sending (READ) to  $\mathcal{G}_{\text{Ledger}}$ .
14: end if
15:  $\text{State} \leftarrow \text{CLOSED}$ 
16: output (CLOSED) to  $R$ 

```

Figure 70

### Process VIRT – cooperative closing

```

// we are left intermediary or host of fundee
On (COOP CLOSE, sig_bal, left_comms_revkeys) by  $\bar{P}$ :
1: ensure  $\text{State} = \text{OPEN}$ 
2: parse sig_bal as  $(c'_1, c'_2), \text{sig}_1, \text{sig}_2$ 
3: ensure  $c_{\text{virt}} = c'_1 + c'_2$ 
4: ensure  $\text{VERIFY}((c'_1, c'_2), \text{sig}_1, pk_{\text{left,virt}}) = \text{True}$ 
5: ensure  $\text{VERIFY}((c'_1, c'_2), \text{sig}_2, pk_{\text{right,virt}}) = \text{True}$ 
6:  $\text{State} \leftarrow \text{COOP CLOSING}$ 
7: extract  $\text{sig}_{i-1,\text{right},C}, pk_{i-1,\text{right},R}$  from
   left_comms_revkeys
8: if  $i < n$  then  $M \leftarrow \text{CHECK COOP CLOSE}$  else
    $M \leftarrow \text{CHECK COOP CLOSE FUNDEE}$ 
9: output  $(M, (c'_1, c'_2), \text{sig}_{i-1,\text{right},C}, pk_{i-1,\text{right},R})$  to guest
10: ensure  $\text{State} = \text{OPEN}$  // executed by guest
11:  $\text{State} \leftarrow \text{COOP CLOSING}$ 
12: store received signature as  $\text{sig}_{\bar{P},C,i+1}$  // in guests,  $i$  is the
    current state number
13: store received revocation key as  $pk_{\bar{P},R,i+2}$ 
14: remove most recent keys from list of old funding keys and
    assign them to  $sk'_{P,F}, pk'_{P,F}$  and  $pk'_{\bar{P},F}$ 
15:  $C_{P,i+1} \leftarrow \text{TX}$  {input:
    $(c_P + c_{\bar{P}} + c'_1 + c'_2, 2/\{pk'_{P,F}, pk'_{\bar{P},F}\})$ , outputs:
    $(c_P + c'_2, (pk_{P,\text{out}} + (p + s)) \vee 2/\{pk_{\bar{P},R,i+1}, pk_{P,R,i+1}\}),$ 
    $(c_{\bar{P}} + c'_1, pk_{\bar{P},\text{out}}))$ 
16: ensure  $\text{VERIFY}(C_{P,i+1}, \text{sig}_{\bar{P},C,i+1}, pk'_{\bar{P},F}) = \text{True}$ 
17: input (COOP CLOSE CHECK OK) to  $\text{host}_P$ 
18: if  $i < n$  then // we are intermediary
19:   input (COOP CLOSE, left_comms_keys) to sibling
20:   ensure  $\text{State} = \text{OPEN}$  // executed by sibling
21:    $\text{State} \leftarrow \text{COOP CLOSING}$ 
22:   output (COOP CLOSE SIGN COMM,  $(c'_1, c'_2)$ ) to guest
23:   ensure  $\text{State} = \text{OPEN}$  // executed by guest of
      sibling
24:    $\text{State} \leftarrow \text{COOP CLOSING}$ 
25:   remove most recent keys from list of old funding keys
      and assign them to  $sk'_{P,F}, pk'_{P,F}$  and  $pk'_{\bar{P},F}$ 
26:    $C_{\bar{P},i+1} \leftarrow \text{TX}$  {input:
       $(c_P + c_{\bar{P}} + c'_1 + c'_2, 2/\{pk'_{P,F}, pk'_{\bar{P},F}\})$ , outputs:
       $(c_P + c'_1, pk_{P,\text{out}}),$ 
       $(c_{\bar{P}} + c'_2, (pk_{\bar{P},\text{out}} + (p + s)) \vee 2/\{pk_{P,R,i+1}, pk_{\bar{P},R,i+1}\})$ 

```

```

27:  $\text{sig}_{P,C,i+1} \leftarrow \text{SIGN}(C_{\bar{P},i+1}, sk'_{P,F})$ 
28:  $(sk_{P,R,i+2}, pk_{P,R,i+2}) \leftarrow \text{KEYGEN}()$ 
29: input (NEW COMM TX,  $\text{sig}_{P,C,i+1}, pk_{P,R,i+2}$ ) to  $\text{host}_P$ 
30: rename received signature to  $\text{sig}_{i,\text{right},C}$  // executed by
    sibling
31: rename received public key to  $pk_{i,\text{right},R}$  // in hosts,  $i$ 
    is our hop number
32: send (COOP CLOSE, sig_bal, (left_comms_keys,
    $\text{sig}_{i,\text{right},C}, pk_{i,\text{right},R}$ ) to  $\bar{P}$  and expect reply (COOP CLOSE
   BACK, (right_comms_revkeys,
   right_revocations))
33:  $R_{\text{loc},\text{right},\text{virt}} \leftarrow \text{TX}$  {input:
    $(c_{\text{virt}}, 2/\{pk_{i,\text{rev}}, pk_{i+1,\text{rev}}\})$ , output:  $(c_{\text{virt}}, pk_{i,\text{out}})$ }
34: extract  $\text{sig}_{i+1,\text{right},\text{rev},\text{virt}}$  from right_revocations
35: ensure  $\text{VERIFY}(R_{\text{loc},\text{right},\text{virt}}, \text{sig}_{i+1,\text{right},\text{rev},\text{virt}},$ 
    $pk_{i+1,\text{rev}}) = \text{True}$ 
36:  $R_{\text{loc},\text{right},\text{fund}} \leftarrow \text{TX}$  {input:
    $(c_P + c_{\bar{P}}, 2/\{pk_{i,\text{rev}}, pk_{i+1,\text{rev}}\})$ , output:  $(c_P + c_{\bar{P}}, pk_{i,\text{out}})$ }
37: extract  $\text{sig}_{i+1,\text{right},\text{rev},\text{fund}}$  from
   right_revocations
38: ensure  $\text{VERIFY}(R_{\text{loc},\text{right},\text{fund}}, \text{sig}_{i+1,\text{right},\text{rev},\text{fund}},$ 
    $pk_{i+1,\text{rev}}) = \text{True}$ 
39: extract  $\text{sig}_{i+1,\text{left},C}$  from right_comms_revkeys
40: extract  $\text{sig}_{i+1,\text{left},R}$  from right_revocations
41: extract  $pk_{i+1,\text{left},R}$  from right_comms_revkeys
42: output (VERIFY COMM REV,  $\text{sig}_{i+1,\text{left},C}, \text{sig}_{i+1,\text{left},R},$ 
    $pk_{i+1,\text{left},R}$ ) to guest
43: store received public key as  $pk_{\bar{P},R,i+2}$  // executed by
    guest of sibling
44: store  $\text{sig}_{i+1,\text{left},C}$  as  $\text{sig}_{\bar{P},C,i+1}, pk_{\bar{P},R,i+2}$ 
45:  $C_{P,i+1} \leftarrow \text{TX}$  {input:
    $(c_P + c_{\bar{P}} + c'_1 + c'_2, 2/\{pk'_{P,F}, pk'_{\bar{P},F}\})$ , outputs:
    $(c_P + c'_1, (pk_{P,\text{out}} + (p + s)) \vee 2/\{pk_{P,R,i+1}, pk_{\bar{P},R,i+1}\}),$ 
    $(c_{\bar{P}} + c'_2, pk_{\bar{P},\text{out}}))$ 
46: ensure  $\text{VERIFY}(C_{P,i+1}, \text{sig}_{\bar{P},C,i+1}, pk'_{\bar{P},F}) = \text{True}$ 
47: store  $\text{sig}_{i+1,\text{left},R}$  as  $\text{sig}_{\bar{P},R,i}$ 
48:  $R_{P,i} \leftarrow \text{TX}$  {input:  $C_{\bar{P},i}$ , outputs:  $\bar{P}$ , output:  $(c_P + c_{\bar{P}},$ 
    $pk_{P,\text{out}})$ }
49: ensure  $\text{VERIFY}(R_{P,i}, \text{sig}_{\bar{P},R,i}, pk_{\bar{P},R,i}) = \text{True}$ 
50: input (COMM REV VERIFIED) to  $\text{host}_P$ 
51: output (COOP CLOSE BACK, right_comms_revkeys,
   right_revocations) to sibling // executed by
   sibling
52:  $R_{\text{loc},\text{left},\text{virt}} \leftarrow \text{TX}$  {input:
    $(c_{\text{virt}}, 4/\{pk_{1,\text{rev}}, pk_{i-1,\text{rev}}, pk_{i,\text{rev}}, pk_{n,\text{rev}}\})$ , output:
    $(c_{\text{virt}}, pk_{i,\text{out}})$  // the input corresponds to the revocation
   path of the virtual output of all virtual txs owned by  $\bar{P}$ 
53: extract  $\text{sig}_{n,i,\text{left},\text{rev},\text{virt}}$  from right_revocations
54: ensure  $\text{VERIFY}(R_{\text{loc},\text{left}}, \text{sig}_{n,i,\text{left},\text{rev}}, pk_{n,\text{rev}}) = \text{True}$ 
55: if  $i = 2$  then  $m \leftarrow 1$  else  $m \leftarrow 2$ 
56: if  $i = n - 1$  then  $l \leftarrow n$  else  $l \leftarrow n - 1$ 
57: ensure that the following signatures are present in
   right_revocations and store them:
   • // 1 signature
58:  $\text{sig}(R_{i-1,1}, pk_{n,\text{rev}})$ 
   • //  $l - m$  signatures
59:  $\forall k \in \{m, \dots, l\} \setminus \{i\} :$ 
60:  $\text{sig}(R_{i-1,2,k}, pk_{n,\text{rev}})$ 
   • //  $(i - m) \cdot (l - i)$  signatures
61:  $\forall k_1 \in \{m, \dots, i - 1\}, \forall k_2 \in \{i + 1, \dots, l\} :$ 
62:  $\text{sig}(R_{i-1,3,k_1,k_2}, pk_{n,\text{rev}})$ 
63: else //  $i = n$ , we are host of fundee

```



```

64:   output (REVOKE) to fundee
65:    $R_{\bar{P},i} \leftarrow \text{TX} \{\text{input: } C_{P,i}.\text{outputs}.P, \text{output: } (C_P, pk_{\bar{P},\text{out}})\}$  // executed by fundee
66:    $\text{sig}_{P,R,i} \leftarrow \text{SIGN}(R_{\bar{P},i}, sk_{P,R,i})$ 
67:    $\text{virtual\_revocation\_sigs} \leftarrow \emptyset$ 
68:   for  $j \in [n-1]$  do
69:      $R_{j,1} \leftarrow \text{TX} \{\text{input: } \text{TX}_{j,1}.\text{revocation}_1, \text{output: } (c_{\text{virt}}, pk_{j+1,\text{out}})\}$ 
70:      $\text{sig}_{j,R,1,i} \leftarrow \text{SIGN}(R_{j,1}, sk_{i,\text{rev}});$ 
71:      $\text{virtual\_revocation\_sigs} \leftarrow \text{virtual\_revocation\_sigs} \cup \text{sig}_{j,R,1,i}$ 
72:     if  $j = 2$  then  $m \leftarrow 1$  else  $m \leftarrow 2$ 
73:     if  $j = n-1$  then  $l \leftarrow n$  else  $l \leftarrow n-1$ 
74:     for  $k \in \{m, \dots, l\}$  do
75:        $R_{j,2,k} \leftarrow \text{TX} \{\text{input: } \text{TX}_{j,2,k}.\text{revocation}_{2,k}, \text{output: } (c_{\text{virt}}, pk_{j+1,\text{out}})\}$ 
76:        $\text{sig}_{j,R,2,k,i} \leftarrow \text{SIGN}(R_{j,2,k}, sk_{i,\text{rev}});$ 
77:        $\text{virtual\_revocation\_sigs} \leftarrow \text{virtual\_revocation\_sigs} \cup \text{sig}_{j,R,2,k,i}$ 
78:     end for
79:     for  $k_1 \in \{m, \dots, j-1\}, k_2 \in \{j+1, \dots, l\}$  do
80:        $\text{TX}_{j,3,k_1,k_2}.\text{revocation}_{3,k_1,k_2}, \text{output: } (c_{\text{virt}}, pk_{j+1,\text{out}})\}$ 
81:        $\text{sig}_{j,R,3,k_1,k_2,i} \leftarrow \text{SIGN}(R_{j,3,k_1,k_2}, sk_{i,\text{rev}});$ 
82:        $\text{virtual\_revocation\_sigs} \leftarrow \text{virtual\_revocation\_sigs} \cup \text{sig}_{j,R,3,k_1,k_2,i}$ 
83:     end for
84:   end for
85:   input (REVOCATIONS,  $\text{sig}_{P,R,i}$ ,  $\text{virtual\_revocation\_sigs}$ ) to  $\text{host}_P$ 
86:   rename received signature  $\text{sig}_{P,R,i}$  to  $\text{sig}_{n,\text{right},R}$ 
87:   for all  $j \in \{2, \dots, n\}$  do
88:      $R_{j,\text{left}} \leftarrow \text{TX} \{\text{input: } (c_{\text{virt}}, 4/\{pk_{1,\text{rev}}, pk_{j-1,\text{rev}}, pk_{j,\text{rev}}, pk_{n,\text{rev}}\}), \text{output: } (c_{\text{virt}}, pk_{j,\text{out}})\}$ 
89:      $\text{sig}_{n,j,\text{left},\text{rev}} \leftarrow \text{SIGN}(R_{j,\text{left}}, sk_{n,\text{rev}})$ 
90:   end for
91: end if
92: output (NEW COMM REV) to guest
93:  $C_{\bar{P},i+1} \leftarrow \text{TX} \{\text{input: } (C_P + c_{\bar{P}} + c'_1 + c'_2, 2/\{pk'_{\bar{P},F}, pk'_{P,F}\}), \text{outputs: } (c_{\bar{P}} + c'_1, (pk_{\bar{P},\text{out}} + (p + s)) \vee 2/\{pk_{\bar{P},R,i+1}, pk_{P,R,i+1}\}), (C_P + c'_2, pk_{P,\text{out}})\}$  // executed by guest
94:  $\text{sig}_{P,C,i+1} \leftarrow \text{SIGN}(C_{\bar{P},i+1}, sk'_{P,F})$ 
95:  $R_{\bar{P},i} \leftarrow \text{TX} \{\text{input: } C_{P,i}.\text{outputs}.P, \text{output: } (C_P + c_{\bar{P}}, pk_{\bar{P},\text{out}})\}$ 
96:  $\text{sig}_{P,R,i} \leftarrow \text{SIGN}(R_{\bar{P},i}, sk_{P,R,i})$ 
97:  $(sk_{P,R,i+2}, pk_{P,R,i+2}) \leftarrow \text{KEYGEN}()$ 
98: input (NEW COMM REV,  $\text{sig}_{P,C,i+1}$ ,  $\text{sig}_{P,R,i}$ ,  $pk_{P,R,i+2}$ ) to  $\text{host}_P$ 
99: rename  $\text{sig}_{P,C,i+1}$  to  $\text{sig}_{i,\text{left},C}$ 
100: rename  $\text{sig}_{P,R,i}$  to  $\text{sig}_{i,\text{left},R}$ 
101: rename received public key to  $pk_{i,\text{left},R}$ 
102:  $R_{\text{rem},\text{left},\text{virt}} \leftarrow \text{TX} \{\text{input: } (c_{\text{virt}}, 2/\{pk_{i-1,\text{rev}}, pk_{i,\text{rev}}\}), \text{output: } (c_{\text{virt}}, pk_{i-1,\text{out}})\}$ 
103:  $\text{sig}_{i,\text{left},\text{rev},\text{virt}} \leftarrow \text{SIGN}(R_{\text{rem},\text{left},\text{virt}}, sk_{i,\text{rev}})$ 
104:  $R_{\text{rem},\text{left},\text{fund}} \leftarrow \text{TX} \{\text{input: } (C_P + c_{\bar{P}}, 2/\{pk_{i-1,\text{rev}}, pk_{i,\text{rev}}\}), \text{output: } (C_P + c_{\bar{P}}, pk_{i-1,\text{out}})\}$ 
105:  $\text{sig}_{i,\text{left},\text{rev},\text{fund}} \leftarrow \text{SIGN}(R_{\text{rem},\text{left},\text{fund}}, sk_{i,\text{rev}})$ 
106: if  $i < n$  then // we are intermediary
107:    $M \leftarrow (\text{COOP CLOSE BACK}, ((\text{right\_comms\_revkeys}, \text{sig}_{i,\text{left},C}, pk_{i,\text{left},R}), (\text{right\_revocations}, \text{sig}_{i,\text{left},\text{rev},\text{virt}}, \text{sig}_{i,\text{left},\text{rev},\text{fund}}, \text{sig}_{i,\text{left},R})))$ 

```

```

105: else //  $i = n$ , we are host of fundee
106:    $M \leftarrow (\text{COOP CLOSE BACK}, (\text{sig}_{i,\text{left},C}, pk_{i,\text{left},R}, \text{sig}_{n,\text{left},R}), (\text{sig}_{n,\text{left},\text{rev},\text{virt}}, \text{sig}_{n,\text{left},\text{rev},\text{fund}}, (\text{sig}_{n,j,\text{left},\text{rev}})_{j \in \{2, \dots, n\}}), \text{virtual\_rev\_sigs}))$ 
107: end if
108: send  $M$  to  $\bar{P}$  and expect reply (COOP CLOSE REVOCATIONS, left_revocations)
109: extract  $\text{sig}_{i-1,\text{right},R}$ ,  $\text{sig}_{1,\text{right},\text{rev}}$ ,  $\text{sig}_{i-1,\text{right},\text{rev}}$  from left_revocations
110: ensure  $\text{VERIFY}(R_{\text{loc},\text{left},\text{virt}}, \text{sig}_{1,\text{right},\text{rev}}, pk_{1,\text{rev}}) = \text{True}$ 
111: ensure  $\text{VERIFY}(R_{\text{loc},\text{left},\text{virt}}, \text{sig}_{i-1,\text{right},\text{rev}}, pk_{i-1,\text{rev}}) = \text{True}$ 
112:  $R_{\text{loc},\text{left},\text{fund}} \leftarrow \text{TX} \{\text{input: } (C_P + c_{\bar{P}}, 2/\{pk_{i-1,\text{rev}}, pk_{i,\text{rev}}\}), \text{output: } (C_P + c_{\bar{P}}, pk_{i,\text{out}})\}$  // the input corresponds to the revocation path of the right funding output of all virtual txs owned by  $\bar{P}$ 
113: extract  $\text{sig}_{i-1,\text{left},\text{rev},\text{fund}}$  from left_revocations
114: ensure  $\text{VERIFY}(R_{\text{loc},\text{left},\text{fund}}, \text{sig}_{i-1,\text{left},\text{rev},\text{fund}}, pk_{i-1,\text{rev}}) = \text{True}$ 
115: if  $i = 2$  then  $m \leftarrow 1$  else  $m \leftarrow 2$ 
116: if  $i = n-1$  then  $l \leftarrow n$  else  $l \leftarrow n-1$ 
117: ensure that the following signatures are present in left_revocations and store them:
    • // 2 signatures
118:    $\text{sig}(R_{i-1,1}, pk_{1,\text{rev}}), \text{sig}(R_{i-1,1}, pk_{i-1,\text{rev}})$ 
    • //  $2(l-m)$  signatures
119:    $\forall k \in \{m, \dots, l\} \setminus \{i\} :$ 
120:      $\text{sig}(R_{i-1,2,k}, pk_{1,\text{rev}}), \text{sig}(R_{i-1,2,k}, pk_{i-1,\text{rev}})$ 
    • //  $2(i-m) \cdot (l-i)$  signatures
121:    $\forall k_1 \in \{m, \dots, i-1\}, \forall k_2 \in \{i+1, \dots, l\} :$ 
122:      $\text{sig}(R_{i-1,3,k_1,k_2}, pk_{1,\text{rev}}), \text{sig}(R_{i-1,3,k_1,k_2}, pk_{i-1,\text{rev}})$ 
123: output (VERIFY REV,  $\text{sig}_{i-1,\text{right},R}$ ,  $\text{host}_P$ ) to guest
124: store received signature as  $\text{sig}_{\text{bar}P,R,i}$  // executed by guest
125:  $R_{P,i} \leftarrow \text{TX} \{\text{input: } C_{\bar{P},i}.\text{outputs}.\bar{P}, \text{output: } (C_P + c_{\bar{P}}, pk_{P,\text{out}})\}$ 
126: ensure  $\text{VERIFY}(R_{P,i}, \text{sig}_{\bar{P},R,i}, pk_{\bar{P},R,i}) = \text{True}$ 
127: add  $\text{host}_P$  to list of old hosts
128: assign received host to  $\text{host}_P$ 
129:  $i \leftarrow i+1; C_P \leftarrow C_P + c'_2; c_{\bar{P}} \leftarrow c_{\bar{P}} + c'_1$ 
130: add  $sk_{P,F}, pk_{P,F}, pk_{\bar{P},F}$  to list of old enabler channel funding keys
131:  $(sk_{P,F}, pk_{P,F}) \leftarrow (sk'_{P,F}, pk'_{P,F})$ 
132:  $\text{layer} \leftarrow \text{layer} - 1$ 
133:  $\text{locked}_P \leftarrow \text{locked}_P - c_{\text{virt}}$ 
134:  $\text{State} \leftarrow \text{OPEN}$ 
135:  $\text{hosting} \leftarrow \text{False}$ 
136: input (REV VERIFIED) to last old host
137:  $\text{State} \leftarrow \text{COOP CLOSED}$ 
138: if  $i < n$  then // we are intermediary
139:   send (COOP CLOSE REVOCATIONS, left_revocations) to sibling
140:   output (COOP CLOSE REVOCATIONS,  $\text{host}_P$ ) to guest // executed by sibling
141:    $R_{\bar{P},i} \leftarrow \text{TX} \{\text{input: } C_{P,i}.\text{outputs}.P, \text{output: } (C_P, pk_{\bar{P},\text{out}})\}$  // executed by guest of sibling
142:    $\text{sig}_{P,R,i} \leftarrow \text{SIGN}(R_{\bar{P},i}, sk_{P,R,i})$ 
143:   add  $\text{host}_P$  to list of old hosts
144:   assign received host to  $\text{host}_P$ 
145:    $i \leftarrow i+1; C_P \leftarrow C_P + c'_1; c_{\bar{P}} \leftarrow c_{\bar{P}} + c'_2$ 
146:   add  $sk_{P,F}, pk_{P,F}, pk_{\bar{P},F}$  to list of old enabler channel

```

```

funding keys
147:  $(sk_{P,F}, pk_{P,F}) \leftarrow (sk'_{P,F}, pk'_{P,F})$ 
148:  $layer \leftarrow layer - 1$ 
149:  $locked_P \leftarrow locked_P - c_{virt}$ 
150:  $State \leftarrow OPEN$ 
151:  $hosting \leftarrow False$ 
152: input (REVOCATION,  $sig_{P,R,i}$ ) to last old host
153: rename received signature to  $sig_{i,right,R}$  // executed by
    sibling
154:  $R_{rem,right,virt} \leftarrow TX$  {input:
    ( $c_{virt}, 4/\{pk_{1,rev}, pk_{i,rev}, pk_{i+1,rev}, pk_{n,rev}\}$ ), output:
    ( $c_{virt}, pk_{i+1,out}$ )}
155:  $sig_{i,right,rev,virt} \leftarrow SIGN(R_{rem,right,virt}, sk_{i,rev})$ 
156:  $R_{rem,right,fund} \leftarrow TX$  {input:
    ( $c_P + c_{\bar{P}}, 2/\{pk_{i,rev}, pk_{i+1,rev}\}$ ), output:
    ( $c_P + c_{\bar{P}}, pk_{i+1,out}$ )}
157:  $sig_{i,right,rev,fund} \leftarrow SIGN(R_{rem,right,fund}, sk_{i,rev})$ 
158:  $R_{i,1} \leftarrow TX$  {input:  $TX_{i,1}.revocation_1$ , output:
    ( $c_{virt}, pk_{i+1,out}$ )}
159:  $sig_{i,R,1,i} \leftarrow SIGN(R_{i,1}, sk_{i,rev});$ 
    left_revocations  $\leftarrow$ 
    left_revocations  $\cup sig_{i,R,1,i}$ 
160: if  $i = 2$  then  $m \leftarrow 1$  else  $m \leftarrow 2$ 
161: if  $i = n - 1$  then  $l \leftarrow n$  else  $l \leftarrow n - 1$ 
162: for  $k \in \{m, \dots, l\}$  do
163:    $R_{i,2,k} \leftarrow TX$  {input:  $TX_{i,2,k}.revocation_{2,k}$ ,
    output: ( $c_{virt}, pk_{i+1,out}$ )}
164:    $sig_{i,R,2,k,i} \leftarrow SIGN(R_{i,2,k}, sk_{i,rev});$ 
    left_revocations  $\leftarrow$ 
    left_revocations  $\cup sig_{i,R,2,k,i}$ 
165: end for
166: for  $k_1 \in \{m, \dots, i - 1\}, k_2 \in \{i + 1, \dots, l\}$  do
167:    $R_{i,3,k_1,k_2} \leftarrow TX$  {input:
     $TX_{i,3,k_1,k_2}.revocation_{3,k_1,k_2}$ , output: ( $c_{virt}, pk_{i+1,out}$ )}
168:    $sig_{i,R,3,k_1,k_2,i} \leftarrow SIGN(R_{i,3,k_1,k_2}, sk_{i,rev});$ 
    left_revocations  $\leftarrow$ 
    left_revocations  $\cup sig_{i,R,3,k_1,k_2,i}$ 
169: end for
170: send (COOP CLOSE REVOCATIONS,
    (left_revocations,  $sig_{i,right,R}$ ,  $sig_{i,right,rev,virt}$ ,
     $sig_{i,right,rev,fund}$ ) to  $\bar{P}$ )
171: else //  $i = n$ , we are host of fundee
172:   extract  $sig_{1,right,R}$  from left_revocations
173:   output (VERIFY REVOCATION,  $sig_{1,right,R}$ ) to fundee
174:   store received signature as  $sig_{\bar{P},R,i}$  // executed by
    fundee
175:  $R_{P,i} \leftarrow TX$  {input:  $C_{\bar{P},i}.outputs.\bar{P}$ , output:
    ( $c_{\bar{P}}, pk_{P,out}$ )}
176: ensure  $VERIFY(R_{P,i}, sig_{\bar{P},R,i}, pk_{\bar{P},R,i}) = True$ 
177: for  $j \in [n - 1]$  do
178:   if  $j = 2$  then  $m \leftarrow 1$  else  $m \leftarrow 2$ 
179:   if  $j = n - 1$  then  $l \leftarrow n$  else  $l \leftarrow n - 1$ 
180:   ensure that the following signatures are present in
    left_revocations and store them: // exclude signatures
    by  $j + 1$  if  $j = n - 1$ 
    • // 3 signatures
181:    $sig(R_{j,1}, pk_{1,rev}), sig(R_{j,1}, pk_{j,rev}),$ 
     $sig(R_{j,1}, pk_{j+1,rev})$ 
    • //  $3(l - m)$  signatures
182:    $\forall k \in \{m, \dots, l\} \setminus \{i\} :$ 
183:    $sig(R_{j,2,k}, pk_{1,rev}), sig(R_{j,2,k}, pk_{j,rev}),$ 
     $sig(R_{j,2,k}, pk_{j+1,rev})$ 
    • //  $3(i - m) \cdot (l - i)$  signatures

```

```

184:    $\forall k_1 \in \{m, \dots, i - 1\}, \forall k_2 \in \{i + 1, \dots, l\} :$ 
185:    $sig(R_{j,3,k_1,k_2}, pk_{1,rev}),$ 
     $sig(R_{j,3,k_1,k_2}, pk_{j,rev}), sig(R_{j,3,k_1,k_2}, pk_{j+1,rev})$ 
186: end for
187:  $State \leftarrow COOP CLOSED$ 
188: if  $close\_initiator = P$  then //  $\mathcal{E}$  instructed us to
    close the channel
189:   execute code of Fig. 53
190: else //  $\mathcal{E}$  instructed another party to close the channel
191:   send (COOPCLOSED) to  $close\_initiator$ 
192: end if
193: end if

```

Figure 71

#### Process VIRT – punishment handling

```

1: On input (USED REVOCATION) by guest: // (USED
    REVOCATION) by funder/fundee is ignored
2:    $State \leftarrow GUEST PUNISHED$ 
3:   input (USED REVOCATION) to  $host_P$ , expect reply
    (USED REVOCATION OK)
4:   if funder or fundee is defined then
5:     output (ENABLER USED REVOCATION) to it
6:   else // sibling is defined
7:     output (ENABLER USED REVOCATION) to sibling
8:   end if
9: On input (ENABLER USED REVOCATION) by sibling:
10:    $State \leftarrow GUEST PUNISHED$ 
11:   output (ENABLER USED REVOCATION) to guest
12: On output (USED REVOCATION) by  $host_P$ :
13:    $State \leftarrow GUEST PUNISHED$ 
14:   if funder or fundee is defined then
15:     output (ENABLER USED REVOCATION) to it
16:   else // sibling is defined
17:     output (ENABLER USED REVOCATION) to sibling
18:   end if

```

Figure 72

## APPENDIX G

### THE LEDGER, CLOCK AND NETWORK FUNCTIONALITY

We next provide the complete description of the ledger functionality as well as the clock and network functionalities that are drawn from the UC formalisation of [9], [8].

The key characteristics of the functionality are as follows. The variable *state* maintains the current immutable state of the ledger. An honest, synchronised party considers finalised a prefix of state (specified by a pointer position  $pt_i$  for party  $U_i$  below). The functionality has a parameter *windowSize* such that no finalised prefix of any player will be shorter than  $|state| - \text{windowSize}$ . On any input originating from an honest party the functionality will run the *ExtendPolicy* function that ensures that a suitable sequence of transactions will be “blockified” and added to *state*. Honest parties may also find themselves in a desynchronised state: this is when

honest parties lose access to some of their resources. The resources that are necessary for proper ledger maintenance and that the functionality keeps track of are the global random oracle  $\mathcal{G}_{RO}$  and the clock  $\mathcal{G}_{CLOCK}$ . If an honest party maintains registration with all the resources then after  $\text{Delay}$  clock ticks it necessarily becomes synchronised.

The progress of the state variable is guaranteed via the **ExtendPolicy** function that is executed when honest parties submit inputs to the functionality. While we do not specify **ExtendPolicy** in our paper (we refer to the citations above for the full specification) it is sufficient to note that **ExtendPolicy** guarantees the following properties:

- 1) in a period of time equal to  $\text{maxTime}_{\text{window}}$ , a number of blocks at least  $\text{windowSize}$  are added to state.
- 2) in a period of time equal to  $\text{minTime}_{\text{window}}$ , no more blocks may be added to state if  $\text{windowSize}$  blocks have been already added.
- 3) each window of  $\text{windowSize}$  blocks has at most  $\text{advBlcks}_{\text{window}}$  adversarial blocks included in it.
- 4) any transaction that (i) is submitted by an honest party earlier than  $\frac{\text{Delay}}{2}$  rounds before the time that the block that is  $\text{windowSize}$  positions before the head of the state was included, and (ii) is valid with respect to an honest block that extends state, then it must be included in such block.

Given a synchronised honest party, we say that a transaction  $\text{tx}$  is finalised when it becomes a part of state in its view.

#### Functionality $\mathcal{G}_{\text{LEDGER}}$

**General:** The functionality is parameterized by four algorithms, **Validate**, **ExtendPolicy**, **Blockify**, and **predict-time**, along with three parameters:  $\text{windowSize}, \text{Delay} \in \mathbb{N}$ , and  $\mathcal{S}_{\text{initStake}} := \{(U_1, s_1), \dots, (U_n, s_n)\}$ . The functionality manages variables *state* (the immutable state of the ledger), *NxtBC* (a list of transaction identifiers to be added to the ledger), *buffer* (the set of pending transactions),  $\tau_L$  (the rules under which the state is extended), and  $\vec{\tau}_{\text{state}}$  (the time sequence where all immutable blocks where added). The variables are initialized as follows:

$\text{state} := \vec{\tau}_{\text{state}} := \text{NxtBC} := \varepsilon$ ,  $\text{buffer} := \emptyset$ ,  $\tau_L = 0$ . For each party  $U_p \in \mathcal{P}$  the functionality maintains a pointer  $\text{pt}_i$  (initially set to 1) and a current-state view  $\text{state}_p := \varepsilon$  (initially set to empty). The functionality also keeps track of the timed honest-input sequence in a vector  $\vec{\mathcal{I}}_H^T$  (initially  $\vec{\mathcal{I}}_H^T := \varepsilon$ ).

**Party Management:** The functionality maintains the set of registered parties  $\mathcal{P}$ , the (sub-)set of honest parties  $\mathcal{H} \subseteq \mathcal{P}$ , and the (sub-set) of de-synchronized honest parties  $\mathcal{P}_{DS} \subset \mathcal{H}$  (as discussed below). The sets  $\mathcal{P}, \mathcal{H}, \mathcal{P}_{DS}$  are all initially set to  $\emptyset$ . When a (currently unregistered) honest party is registered at the ledger, if it is registered with the clock and the global RO already, then it is added to the party sets  $\mathcal{H}$  and  $\mathcal{P}$  and the current time of registration is also recorded; if the current time is  $\tau_L > 0$ , it is also added to  $\mathcal{P}_{DS}$ . Similarly, when a party is deregistered, it is removed from both  $\mathcal{P}$  (and therefore also from  $\mathcal{P}_{DS}$  or  $\mathcal{H}$ ). The ledger maintains the invariant that it is registered (as a functionality) to the clock whenever  $\mathcal{H} \neq \emptyset$ .

**Handling initial stakeholders:** If during round  $\tau = 0$ , the ledger did not receive a registration from each initial stakeholder, i.e.,  $U_p \in \mathcal{S}_{\text{initStake}}$ , the functionality halts.

**Upon receiving any input  $I$**  from any party or from the adversary, send  $(\text{CLOCK-READ}, \text{sid}_C)$  to  $\mathcal{G}_{\text{CLOCK}}$  and upon receiving response  $(\text{CLOCK-READ}, \text{sid}_C, \tau)$  set  $\tau_L := \tau$  and do the following if  $\tau > 0$  (otherwise, ignore input):

- 1) Updating synchronized/desynchronized party set:
  - a) Let  $\hat{\mathcal{P}} \subseteq \mathcal{P}_{DS}$  denote the set of desynchronized honest parties that have been registered (continuously) to the ledger, the clock, and the GRO since time  $\tau' < \tau_L - \text{Delay}$ . Set  $\mathcal{P}_{DS} := \mathcal{P}_{DS} \setminus \hat{\mathcal{P}}$ .
  - b) For any synchronized party  $U_p \in \mathcal{H} \setminus \mathcal{P}_{DS}$ , if  $U_p$  is not registered to the clock, then consider it desynchronized, i.e., set  $\mathcal{P}_{DS} \cup \{U_p\}$ .
- 2) If  $I$  was received from an honest party  $U_p \in \mathcal{P}$ :
  - a) Set  $\vec{\mathcal{I}}_H^T := \vec{\mathcal{I}}_H^T || (I, U_p, \tau_L)$ ;
  - b) Compute  $\vec{N} = (\vec{N}_1, \dots, \vec{N}_\ell) := \text{ExtendPolicy}(\vec{\mathcal{I}}_H^T, \text{state}, \text{NxtBC}, \text{buffer}, \vec{\tau}_{\text{state}})$  and if  $\vec{N} \neq \varepsilon$  set  $\text{state} := \text{state} || \text{Blockify}(\vec{N}_1) || \dots || \text{Blockify}(\vec{N}_\ell)$  and  $\vec{\tau}_{\text{state}} := \vec{\tau}_{\text{state}} || \tau_L^\ell$ , where  $\tau_L^\ell = \tau_L || \dots || \tau_L$ .
  - c) For each  $\text{BTX} \in \text{buffer}$ : if  $\text{Validate}(\text{BTX}, \text{state}, \text{buffer}) = 0$  then delete  $\text{BTX}$  from  $\text{buffer}$ . Also, reset  $\text{NxtBC} := \varepsilon$ .
  - d) If there exists  $U_j \in \mathcal{H} \setminus \mathcal{P}_{DS}$  such that  $|\text{state}| - \text{pt}_j > \text{windowSize}$  or  $\text{pt}_j < |\text{state}_j|$ , then set  $\text{pt}_k := |\text{state}|$  for all  $U_k \in \mathcal{H} \setminus \mathcal{P}_{DS}$ .
- 3) If the calling party  $U_p$  is *stalled* or *time-unaware* (according to the defined party classification), then no further actions are taken. Otherwise, depending on the above input  $I$  and its sender's ID,  $\mathcal{G}_{\text{LEDGER}}$  executes the corresponding code from the following list:
  - o *Submitting a transaction:*  
If  $I = (\text{SUBMIT}, \text{sid}, \text{tx})$  and is received from a party  $U_p \in \mathcal{P}$  or from  $\mathcal{A}$  (on behalf of a corrupted party  $U_p$ ) do the following
    - a) Choose a unique transaction ID  $\text{txid}$  and set  $\text{BTX} := (\text{tx}, \text{txid}, \tau_L, U_p)$
    - b) If  $\text{Validate}(\text{BTX}, \text{state}, \text{buffer}) = 1$ , then  $\text{buffer} := \text{buffer} \cup \{\text{BTX}\}$ .
    - c) Send  $(\text{SUBMIT}, \text{BTX})$  to  $\mathcal{A}$ .
  - o *Reading the state:*  
If  $I = (\text{READ}, \text{sid})$  is received from a party  $U_p \in \mathcal{P}$  then set  $\text{state}_p := \text{state} |_{\min\{\text{pt}_p, |\text{state}|\}}$  and return  $(\text{READ}, \text{sid}, \text{state}_p)$  to the requester. If the requester is  $\mathcal{A}$  then send  $(\text{state}, \text{buffer}, \vec{\mathcal{I}}_H^T)$  to  $\mathcal{A}$ .
  - o *Maintaining the ledger state:*  
If  $I = (\text{MAINTAIN-LEDGER}, \text{sid}, \text{minerID})$  is received by an honest party  $U_p \in \mathcal{P}$  and (after updating  $\vec{\mathcal{I}}_H^T$  as above)  $\text{predict-time}(\vec{\mathcal{I}}_H^T) = \hat{\tau} > \tau_L$  then send  $(\text{CLOCK-UPDATE}, \text{sid}_C)$  to  $\mathcal{G}_{\text{CLOCK}}$ . Else send  $I$  to  $\mathcal{A}$ .
  - o *The adversary proposing the next block:*  
If  $I = (\text{NEXT-BLOCK}, \text{hFlag}, (\text{txid}_1, \dots, \text{txid}_\ell))$  is sent from the adversary, update  $\text{NxtBC}$  as follows:

- a) Set  $\text{listOfTxid} \leftarrow \epsilon$
- b) For  $i = 1, \dots, \ell$  do: if there exists  $\text{BTX} := (x, \text{txid}, \text{minerID}, \tau_L, U_j) \in \text{buffer}$  with  $\text{ID txid} = \text{txid}_i$  then set  $\text{listOfTxid} := \text{listOfTxid} \parallel \text{txid}_i$ .
- c) Finally, set  $\text{NxtBC} := \text{NxtBC} \parallel (\text{hFlag}, \text{listOfTxid})$  and output  $(\text{NEXT-BLOCK}, ok)$  to  $\mathcal{A}$ .
- o *The adversary setting state-slackness:*  
If  $I = (\text{SET-SLACK}, (U_{i_1}, \widehat{\text{pt}}_{i_1}), \dots, (U_{i_\ell}, \widehat{\text{pt}}_{i_\ell}))$ , with  $\{U_{p_{i_1}}, \dots, U_{p_{i_\ell}}\} \subseteq \mathcal{H} \setminus \mathcal{P}_{DS}$  is received from the adversary  $\mathcal{A}$  do the following:
  - a) If for all  $j \in [\ell] : |\text{state}| - \widehat{\text{pt}}_{i_j} \leq \text{windowSize}$  and  $\widehat{\text{pt}}_{i_j} \geq |\text{state}_{i_j}|$ , set  $\text{pt}_{i_1} := \widehat{\text{pt}}_{i_1}$  for every  $j \in [\ell]$  and return  $(\text{SET-SLACK}, ok)$  to  $\mathcal{A}$ .
  - b) Otherwise set  $\text{pt}_{i_j} := |\text{state}|$  for all  $j \in [\ell]$ .
- o *The adversary setting the state for desynchronized parties:*  
If  $I = (\text{DESYNC-STATE}, (U_{i_1}, \text{state}'_{i_1}), \dots, (U_{i_\ell}, \text{state}'_{i_\ell}))$ , with  $\{U_{i_1}, \dots, U_{i_\ell}\} \subseteq \mathcal{P}_{DS}$  is received from the adversary  $\mathcal{A}$ , set  $\text{state}_{i_j} := \text{state}'_{i_j}$  for each  $j \in [\ell]$  and return  $(\text{DESYNC-STATE}, ok)$  to  $\mathcal{A}$ .

### Functionality $\mathcal{G}_{\text{CLOCK}}$

The functionality manages the set  $\mathcal{P}$  of registered identities, i.e., parties  $U_p = (\text{pid}, \text{sid})$ . It also manages the set  $F$  of functionalities (together with their session identifier). Initially,  $\mathcal{P} := \emptyset$  and  $F := \emptyset$ .

For each session  $\text{sid}$  the clock maintains a variable  $\tau_{\text{sid}}$ . For each identity  $U_p := (\text{pid}, \text{sid}) \in \mathcal{P}$  it manages variable  $d_{U_p}$ . For each pair  $(\mathcal{F}, \text{sid}) \in F$  it manages variable  $d_{(\mathcal{F}, \text{sid})}$  (all integer variables are initially 0).

*Synchronization:*

- Upon receiving  $(\text{CLOCK-UPDATE}, \text{sid}_C)$  from some party  $U_p \in \mathcal{P}$  set  $d_{U_p} := 1$ ; execute *Round-Update* and forward  $(\text{CLOCK-UPDATE}, \text{sid}_C, U_p)$  to  $\mathcal{A}$ .
- Upon receiving  $(\text{CLOCK-UPDATE}, \text{sid}_C)$  from some functionality  $\mathcal{F}$  in a session  $\text{sid}$  such that  $(\mathcal{F}, \text{sid}) \in F$  set  $d_{(\mathcal{F}, \text{sid})} := 1$ , execute *Round-Update* and return  $(\text{CLOCK-UPDATE}, \text{sid}_C, \mathcal{F})$  to this instance of  $\mathcal{F}$ .
- Upon receiving  $(\text{CLOCK-READ}, \text{sid}_C)$  from any participant (including the environment on behalf of a party, the adversary, or any ideal—shared or local—functionality) return  $(\text{CLOCK-READ}, \text{sid}, \tau_{\text{sid}})$  to the requestor (where  $\text{sid}$  is the  $\text{sid}$  of the calling instance).

*Procedure Round-Update:* For each session  $\text{sid}$  do: If  $d_{(\mathcal{F}, \text{sid})} := 1$  for all  $\mathcal{F} \in F$  and  $d_{U_p} = 1$  for all honest parties  $U_p = (\cdot, \text{sid}) \in \mathcal{P}$ , then set  $\tau_{\text{sid}} := \tau_{\text{sid}} + 1$  and reset  $d_{(\mathcal{F}, \text{sid})} := 0$  and  $d_{U_p} := 0$  for all parties  $U_p = (\cdot, \text{sid}) \in \mathcal{P}$ .

### APPENDIX H LIVENESS

*Proposition 6:* Consider a synchronised honest party that submits a transaction  $\text{tx}$  to the ledger functionality [8] by

the time the block indexed by  $h$  is added to state in its view. Then  $\text{tx}$  is guaranteed to be included in the block range  $[h + 1, h + s]$ , where  $s = (2 + q)\text{windowSize}$  and  $q = \lceil (\text{maxTime}_{\text{window}} + \frac{\text{Delay}}{2}) / \text{minTime}_{\text{window}} \rceil$ .

*Proof:* Consider  $\tau_h^U$  to be the round that a party  $U$  becomes aware of the  $h$ -th block in the state. It follows that  $\tau_h \leq \tau_h^U$  where  $\tau_h$  is the round block  $h$  enters state. Note that by time  $\tau_h + \text{maxTime}_{\text{window}}$  another  $\text{windowSize}$  blocks are added to state and thus  $\tau_h^U \leq \tau_h + \text{maxTime}_{\text{window}}$ .

Suppose  $U$  submits the transaction  $\text{tx}$  to the ledger at time  $\tau_h^U$ . Observe that as long as  $\tau_h + \text{maxTime}_{\text{window}}$  is  $\text{Delay}/2$  before the time that block with index  $h + t - 2\text{windowSize}$  enters state, then  $\text{tx}$  is guaranteed to enter the state in a block with index up to  $h + t$  where since  $\text{advBlcks}_{\text{window}} < \text{windowSize}$ . It follows we need  $\tau_h + \text{maxTime}_{\text{window}} < \tau_{h+t-2\text{windowSize}} - \frac{\text{Delay}}{2}$ . Let  $r = \lceil (\text{maxTime}_{\text{window}} + \frac{\text{Delay}}{2}) / \text{minTime}_{\text{window}} \rceil$ . Recall that in a period of  $\text{minTime}_{\text{window}}$  rounds at most  $\text{windowSize}$  blocks enter state. As a result  $r \cdot \text{windowSize}$  blocks require at least  $r \cdot \text{minTime}_{\text{window}} \geq \text{maxTime}_{\text{window}} + \frac{\text{Delay}}{2}$  rounds. We deduce that if  $t \geq (2 + r)\text{windowSize}$  the inequality follows. ■

### APPENDIX I OMITTED PROOFS

*Lemma 7 (Real world balance security):* Consider a real world execution with  $P \in \{\text{Alice}, \text{Bob}\}$  honest LN ITI and  $\bar{P}$  the counterparty ITI. Assume that all of the following are true:

- the internal variable *negligent* of  $P$  has value “False”,
- $P$  has transitioned to the *OPEN State* for the first time after having received  $(\text{OPEN}, c, \dots)$  by either  $\mathcal{E}$  or  $\bar{P}$ ,
- $P$  [has received  $(\text{FUND ME}, f_i, \dots)$  as input by another LN ITI while *State* was *OPEN* and subsequently  $P$  transitioned to *OPEN State*]  $n$  times,
- $P$  [has received  $(\text{CHECK COOP CLOSE FUNDEE}, (\_, r_i), \dots)$  as output by  $\text{host}_P$  while *State* was *OPEN* and subsequently  $P$  transitioned to *OPEN State*]  $j$  times,
- $P$  [has received  $(\text{COOP CLOSE SIGN COMM FUNDER}, (l_i, \_))$  as output by  $\text{host}_P$  while *State* was *OPEN* and subsequently  $P$  transitioned to *OPEN State*]  $k$  times,
- $P$  [has received  $(\text{PAY}, d_i)$  by  $\mathcal{E}$  while *State* was *OPEN* and  $P$  subsequently transitioned to *OPEN State*]  $m$  times,
- $P$  [has received  $(\text{GET PAID}, e_i)$  by  $\mathcal{E}$  while *State* was *OPEN* and  $P$  subsequently transitioned to *OPEN State*]  $l$  times.

Let  $\phi = 1$  if  $P = \text{Alice}$ , or  $\phi = 0$  if  $P = \text{Bob}$ .

- If  $P$  receives  $(\text{FORCECLOSE})$  by  $\mathcal{E}$  and, if  $\text{host}_P \neq \text{“ledger”}$  the output of  $\text{host}_P$  is  $(\text{CLOSED})$ , then eventually the state obtained when  $P$  inputs  $(\text{READ})$  to  $\mathcal{G}_{\text{Ledger}}$  will contain  $h$  outputs each of value  $c_i$  and that



has been spent or is exclusively spendable by  $pk_{R,out}$  such that

$$\sum_{i=1}^h c_i \geq \phi \cdot c - \sum_{i=1}^n f_i - \sum_{i=1}^m d_i + \sum_{i=1}^l e_i + \sum_{i=1}^j r_i + \sum_{i=1}^k l_i \quad (3)$$

with overwhelming probability in the security parameter, where  $R$  is a local, kindred LN machine (i.e., either  $P$ , the guest of  $host_P$ 's sibling, the party to which  $P$  sent FUND ME if such a message has been sent, or the guest of the sibling of one of the transitive closure of hosts of  $P$ ).

- Assume that, at some particular instant during the execution,

- 1)  $host_P \neq \text{"ledger"}$ ,
- 2)  $P$  has *State* OPEN.

Consider two alternative series of subsequent execution steps:

- 1) The guest of  $host_P$  (call them  $S$ ) receives (FORCECLOSE) by  $\mathcal{E}$ . From that point onward, all protocol parties (even corrupted ones) honestly follow the protocol. Eventually a total of  $c_b$  coins is exclusively spendable by  $pk_{R,out}$ , where  $R$  is a machine kindred to  $S$ . Additionally, there is at least one funding output of  $P$ 's channel ( $c_P + c_{\bar{P}}, 2/\{pk_{P,F}, pk_{\bar{P},F}\}$ ) that is on-chain and unspent.
- 2)  $P$  receives either (COOPCLOSE) by  $\mathcal{E}$  or (COOPCLOSE,...) by some other ITI, and  $P$ 's variable *hosting* is False. Subsequently,  $P$ 's *State* transitions to COOP CLOSED and then the *State* of  $S$  transitions to OPEN. The next time  $S$  is activated is via a (FORCECLOSE) input by  $\mathcal{E}$  and eventually a total of  $c_t$  coins is exclusively spendable by  $pk_{R,out}$ .

It then holds that

$$c_t - c_b \geq \phi \cdot c - \sum_{i=1}^n f_i - \sum_{i=1}^m d_i + \sum_{i=1}^l e_i + \sum_{i=1}^j r_i + \sum_{i=1}^k l_i \quad (4)$$

with overwhelming probability in the security parameter.

*Proof of Lemma 7:* We first note that, as signature forgeries only happen with negligible probability and only a polynomial number of signatures are verified by honest parties throughout an execution, the event in which any forged signature passes the verification of an honest party or of  $\mathcal{G}_{\text{Ledger}}$  happens only with negligible probability. We can therefore ignore this event throughout this proof and simply add a computationally negligible distance between  $\mathcal{E}$ 's outputs in the real and the ideal world at the end.

We also note that  $pk_{P,out}$  has been provided by  $\mathcal{E}$ , therefore it can freely use coins spendable by this key. This is why we allow for any of the  $pk_{P,out}$  outputs to have been spent.

Define the *history* of a channel as  $H = (F, C)$ , where each of  $F, C$  is a list of lists of integers. A party  $P$  which satisfies the Lemma conditions has a unique, unambiguously and recursively defined history: If the value *hops* in the (OPEN,  $c$ , *hops*, ...) message was equal to "ledger", then  $F$

is the empty list, otherwise  $F$  is the concatenation of the  $F$  and  $C$  lists of the party that sent (FUNDED, ...) to  $P$ , as they were at the moment the latter message was sent. After initialised,  $F$  remains immutable. Observe that, if *hops*  $\neq$  "ledger", both aforementioned messages must have been received before  $P$  transitions to the OPEN state.

The list  $C$  of party  $P$  is initialised to  $[[g]]$  when  $P$ 's *State* transitions for the first time to OPEN, where  $g = c$  if  $P = \text{Alice}$ , or  $g = 0$  if  $P = \text{Bob}$ ; this represents the initial channel balance. The value  $x$  or  $-x$  is appended to the last list in  $C$  when a payment is received (Fig. 44, l. 21) or sent (Fig. 44, l. 6) respectively by  $P$ . Moving on to the funding of new virtual channels, whenever  $P$  funds a new virtual channel (Fig. 41, l. 21),  $[-c_{\text{virt}}]$  is appended to  $C$  and whenever  $P$  helps with the opening of a new virtual channel, but does not fund it (Fig. 41, l. 24),  $[0]$  is appended to  $C$ . In case of cooperatively closing a channel (Figs. 52-55 & 71) to which  $P$ 's channel is base, if this channel was initially funded by  $P$ , when the closing procedure completes (Fig. 55, l. 53)  $[c'_1]$  is appended to  $C$ . Likewise, if in the closed virtual channel  $P$  was the base of the fundee (Fig. 71, l. 171), then  $[c'_2]$  (Fig. 71, l. 9) is appended to  $C$ . In case  $P$  was a left intermediary for the closed virtual channel (Fig. 71, l. 10), then  $[c'_2]$  is appended to  $C$ . Lastly, in case  $P$  was a right intermediary for the closed virtual channel (Fig. 71, l. 23), then  $[c'_1 - c_{\text{virt}}]$  is appended to  $C$ . Therefore  $C$  consists of one list of integers for each sequence of inbound and outbound payments that have not been interrupted by a virtualisation step and a new list is added for every virtual layer that is created or torn down cooperatively. We also observe that a non-negligent party with history  $(F, C)$  satisfies the Lemma conditions and that the value of the right hand side of the inequality (3) is equal to  $\sum_{s \in C} \sum_{x \in s} x$ , as all inbound and outbound payment values, new channel funding values and cooperative closing refunds that appear in the Lemma conditions are recorded in  $C$ .

Let party  $P$  with a particular history. We will inductively prove that  $P$  satisfies the Lemma. The base case is when a channel is opened with *hops* = "ledger" and is closed right away, therefore  $H = ([], [g])$ , where  $g = c$  if  $P = \text{Alice}$  and  $g = 0$  if  $P = \text{Bob}$ .  $P$  can transition to the OPEN *State* for the first time only if all of the following have taken place:

- It has received (OPEN,  $c$ , ...) while in the INIT *State*. In case  $P = \text{Alice}$ , this message must have been received as input by  $\mathcal{E}$  (Fig. 39, l. 1), or in case  $P = \text{Bob}$ , this message must have been received via the network by  $\bar{P}$  (Fig. 34, l. 3).
- It has received  $pk_{\bar{P},F}$ . In case  $P = \text{Bob}$ ,  $pk_{\bar{P},F}$  must have been contained in the (OPEN, ...) message by  $\bar{P}$  (Fig. 34, l. 3), otherwise if  $P = \text{Alice}$   $pk_{\bar{P},F}$  must have been contained in the (ACCEPT CHANNEL, ...) message by  $\bar{P}$  (Fig. 34, l. 16).
- It internally holds a signature on the commitment transaction  $C_{P,0}$  that is valid when verified with public key  $pk_{\bar{P},F}$  (Fig. 36, ll. 12 and 23).
- It has the transaction  $F$  in the  $\mathcal{G}_{\text{Ledger}}$  state (Fig. 37, l. 3 or Fig. 38, l. 16).

We observe that  $P$  satisfies the Lemma conditions with  $m = n = l = 0$ . Before transitioning to the OPEN *State*,  $P$  has produced only one valid signature for the "funding"

output  $(c, 2/\{pk_{P,F}, pk_{\bar{P},F}\})$  of  $F$  with  $sk_{P,F}$ , namely for  $C_{\bar{P},0}$  (Fig. 36, ll. 4 or 14), and sent it to  $\bar{P}$  (Fig. 36, ll. 6 or 21), therefore the only two ways to spend  $(c, 2/\{pk_{P,F}, pk_{\bar{P},F}\})$  are by either publishing  $C_{P,0}$  or  $C_{\bar{P},0}$ . We observe that  $C_{P,0}$  has a  $(g, (pk_{P,out} + (t+s)) \vee 2/\{pk_{P,R}, pk_{\bar{P},R}\})$  output (Fig. 36, l. 2 or 3). The spending method  $2/\{pk_{P,R}, pk_{\bar{P},R}\}$  cannot be used since  $P$  has not produced a signature for it with  $sk_{P,R}$ , therefore the alternative spending method,  $pk_{P,out} + (t+s)$ , is the only one that will be spendable if  $C_{P,0}$  is included in  $\mathcal{G}_{\text{Ledger}}$ , thus contributing  $g$  to the sum of outputs that contribute to inequality (3). Likewise, if  $C_{\bar{P},0}$  is included in  $\mathcal{G}_{\text{Ledger}}$ , it will contribute at least one  $(g, pk_{P,out})$  output to this inequality, as  $C_{\bar{P},0}$  has a  $(g, pk_{P,out})$  output (Fig. 36, l. 2 or 3). Additionally, if  $P$  receives (FORCECLOSE) by  $\mathcal{E}$  while  $H = ([], [g])$ , it attempts to publish  $C_{P,0}$  (Fig. 50, l. 19), and will either succeed or  $C_{\bar{P},0}$  will be published instead. We therefore conclude that in every case  $\mathcal{G}_{\text{Ledger}}$  will eventually have a state  $\Sigma$  that contains at least one  $(g, pk_{P,out})$  output, therefore satisfying the Lemma consequence.

Let  $P$  with history  $H = (F, C)$ . The induction hypothesis is that the Lemma holds for  $P$ . Let  $c_P$  the sum in the right hand side of inequality (3). In order to perform the induction step, assume that  $P$  is in the OPEN state. We will prove all the following (the facts to be proven are shown with emphasis for clarity):

- If  $P$  receives (FUND ME,  $f$ , ...) by a (local, kindred) LN ITI  $R$ , subsequently transitions back to the OPEN state (therefore moving to history  $(F, C')$  where  $C' = C + [-f]$ ) and finally receives (FORCECLOSE) by  $\mathcal{E}$  and (CLOSED) by  $\text{host}_P$  before any further change to its history, then eventually  $P$ 's  $\mathcal{G}_{\text{Ledger}}$  state will contain  $h$  transaction outputs each of value  $c_i$  exclusively spendable or already spent by  $pk_{P,out}$  that are descendants of an output with spending method  $2/\{pk_{P,F}, pk_{\bar{P},F}\}$  such that  $\sum_{i=1}^h c_i \geq \sum_{s \in C'} \sum_{x \in s} x$ . Furthermore, given that  $P$  moves to the OPEN state after the (FUND ME, ...) message, it also sends (FUNDED, ...) to  $R$  (Fig. 41, l. 22). If subsequently the state of  $R$  transitions to OPEN (therefore obtaining history  $(F_R, C_R)$  where  $F_R = F + C$  and  $C_R = [[f]]$ ), and finally receives (FORCECLOSE) by  $\mathcal{E}$  and (CLOSED) by  $\text{host}_R$  ( $\text{host}_R = \text{host}_P$  - Fig. 38, l. 3) before any further change to its history, then eventually  $R$ 's  $\mathcal{G}_{\text{Ledger}}$  state will contain  $k$  transaction outputs each of value  $c_i^R$  exclusively spendable or already spent by  $pk_{R,out}$  that are descendants of an output with spending method  $2/\{pk_{R,F}, pk_{\bar{R},F}\}$  such that  $\sum_{i=1}^k c_i^R \geq \sum_{s \in C_R} \sum_{x \in s} x$ .
- If  $P$  receives (VIRTUALISING, ...) by  $\bar{P}$  or sibling, subsequently transitions back to OPEN (therefore moving to history  $(F, C')$  where  $C' = C + [0]$ ) and finally receives (FORCECLOSE) by  $\mathcal{E}$  and (CLOSED) by  $\text{host}_P$  before any further change to its history, then eventually  $P$ 's  $\mathcal{G}_{\text{Ledger}}$  state will contain  $h$  transaction outputs each of value  $c_i$  exclusively spendable or already spent by  $pk_{P,out}$  that are descendants of an output with spending method  $2/\{pk_{P,F}, pk_{\bar{P},F}\}$  such that  $\sum_{i=1}^h c_i \geq \sum_{s \in C} \sum_{x \in s} x$ . Furthermore, given that  $P$  moves to the OPEN state after

the (VIRTUALISING, ...) message and in case it sends (FUNDED, ...) to some party  $R$  (Fig. 41, l. 19), the latter party is the (local, kindred) fundee of a new virtual channel. If subsequently the state of  $R$  transitions to OPEN (therefore obtaining history  $(F_R, C_R)$  where  $F_R = F + C$  and  $C_R = [[0]]$ ), and finally receives (FORCECLOSE) by  $\mathcal{E}$  and (CLOSED) by  $\text{host}_R$  ( $\text{host}_R = \text{host}_P$  - Fig. 38, l. 3) before any further change to its history, then eventually  $R$ 's  $\mathcal{G}_{\text{Ledger}}$  state will contain an output with a  $2/\{pk_{R,F}, pk_{\bar{R},F}\}$  spending method.

- If  $P$  receives (CHECK COOP CLOSE, ...) by  $\text{host}_P$ , subsequently transitions back to OPEN (therefore moving to history  $(F, C')$  where  $C' = C + [c'_2]$ ), and finally receives (FORCECLOSE) by  $\mathcal{E}$  and (CLOSED) by  $\text{host}_P$  before any further change to its history, then eventually  $P$ 's  $\mathcal{G}_{\text{Ledger}}$  state will contain  $h$  transaction outputs each of value  $c_i$  exclusively spendable or already spent by  $pk_{P,out}$  that are descendants of an output with spending method  $2/\{pk_{P,F}, pk_{\bar{P},F}\}$  such that  $\sum_{i=1}^h c_i \geq \sum_{s \in C} \sum_{x \in s} x$ .
- If  $P$  receives (COOP CLOSE SIGN COMM, ...) by  $\text{host}_P$ , subsequently transitions back to OPEN (therefore moving to history  $(F, C')$  where  $C' = C + [c'_1 - c_{\text{virt}}]$ ), and finally receives (FORCECLOSE) by  $\mathcal{E}$  and (CLOSED) by  $\text{host}_P$  before any further change to its history, then eventually  $P$ 's  $\mathcal{G}_{\text{Ledger}}$  state will contain  $h$  transaction outputs each of value  $c_i$  exclusively spendable or already spent by  $pk_{P,out}$  that are descendants of an output with spending method  $2/\{pk_{P,F}, pk_{\bar{P},F}\}$  such that  $\sum_{i=1}^h c_i \geq \sum_{s \in C} \sum_{x \in s} x$ . Furthermore, there exists a local, kindred machine  $R$  that transitioned to the OPEN state after the last time control was obtained by one of  $P$ 's kindred machines and before  $P$  transitioned to the OPEN state, such that  $R$  obtained  $c'_2 = c_{\text{virt}} - c'_1$  coins during its last activation. (In other words,  $P$  and  $R$  broke even on aggregate by first supporting the opening and then the cooperative closing of a virtual channel.)
- If  $P$  receives (COOP CLOSE SIG COMM FUNDER, ...) by  $\text{host}_P$ , subsequently transitions back to OPEN (therefore moving to history  $(F, C')$  where  $C' = C + [c'_1]$ ) and finally receives (FORCECLOSE) by  $\mathcal{E}$  and (CLOSED) by  $\text{host}_P$  before any further change to its history, then eventually  $P$ 's  $\mathcal{G}_{\text{Ledger}}$  state will contain  $h$  transaction outputs each of value  $c_i$  exclusively spendable or already spent by  $pk_{P,out}$  that are descendants of an output with spending method  $2/\{pk_{P,F}, pk_{\bar{P},F}\}$  such that  $\sum_{i=1}^h c_i \geq \sum_{s \in C} \sum_{x \in s} x$ .
- If  $P$  receives (CHECK COOP CLOSE FUNDEE, ...) by  $\text{host}_P$ , subsequently transitions back to OPEN (therefore moving to history  $(F, C')$  where  $C' = C + [c'_2]$ ) and finally receives (FORCECLOSE) by  $\mathcal{E}$  and (CLOSED) by  $\text{host}_P$  before any further change to its history, then eventually  $P$ 's  $\mathcal{G}_{\text{Ledger}}$  state will contain  $h$  transaction outputs each of value  $c_i$  exclusively spendable or already spent by  $pk_{P,out}$  that are descendants of an output with spending method  $2/\{pk_{P,F}, pk_{\bar{P},F}\}$  such that  $\sum_{i=1}^h c_i \geq \sum_{s \in C} \sum_{x \in s} x$ .
- If  $P$  receives (PAY,  $d$ ) by  $\mathcal{E}$ , subsequently transitions back to OPEN (therefore moving to history  $(F, C')$  where  $C'$

is  $C$  with  $-d$  appended to the last list of  $C$ ) and finally receives (FORCECLOSE) by  $\mathcal{E}$  and (CLOSED) by  $\text{host}_P$  (the latter only if  $\text{host}_P \neq \text{"ledger"}$  or equivalently  $F \neq []$ ) before any further change to its history, then eventually  $P$ 's  $\mathcal{G}_{\text{Ledger}}$  state will contain  $h$  transaction outputs each of value  $c_i$  exclusively spendable or already spent by  $pk_{P,\text{out}}$  that are descendants of an output with

a  $2/\{pk_{P,F}, pk_{\bar{P},F}\}$  spending method such that  $\sum_{i=1}^h c_i \geq \sum_{s \in C'} \sum_{x \in s} x$ .

- If  $P$  receives (GET PAID,  $e$ ) by  $\mathcal{E}$ , subsequently transitions back to OPEN (therefore moving to history  $(F, C')$  where  $C'$  is  $C$  with  $e$  appended to the last list of  $C$ ) and finally receives (FORCECLOSE) by  $\mathcal{E}$  and (CLOSED) by  $\text{host}_P$  (the latter only if  $\text{host}_P \neq \text{"ledger"}$  or equivalently  $F = []$ ) before any further change to its history, then eventually  $P$ 's  $\mathcal{G}_{\text{Ledger}}$  state will contain  $h$  transaction outputs each of value  $c_i$  exclusively spendable or already spent by  $pk_{P,\text{out}}$  that are descendants of an output with

a  $2/\{pk_{P,F}, pk_{\bar{P},F}\}$  spending method such that  $\sum_{i=1}^h c_i \geq \sum_{s \in C'} \sum_{x \in s} x$ .

Consider the first bullet. By the induction hypothesis, before the funding procedure started  $P$  could close the channel and end up with on-chain transaction outputs exclusively spendable or already spent by  $pk_{P,\text{out}}$  with a sum value of  $c_P$ . When  $P$  is in the OPEN state and receives (FUND ME,  $f, \dots$ ), it can only move again to the OPEN state after doing the following state transitions: OPEN  $\rightarrow$  VIRTUALISING  $\rightarrow$  WAITING FOR REVOCATION  $\rightarrow$  WAITING FOR INBOUND REVOCATION  $\rightarrow$  WAITING FOR HOSTS READY  $\rightarrow$  OPEN. During this sequence of events, a new  $\text{host}_P$  is defined (Fig. 41, l. 6), new commitment transactions are negotiated with  $\bar{P}$  (Fig. 41, l. 9), control of the old funding output is handed over to  $\text{host}_P$  (Fig. 41, l. 11),  $\text{host}_P$  negotiates with its counterparty a new set of transactions and signatures that spend the aforementioned funding output and make available a new funding output with the keys  $pk'_{P,F}, pk'_{\bar{P},F}$  as  $P$  instructed (Fig. 64 and 66) and the previous valid commitment transactions of both  $P$  and  $\bar{P}$  are invalidated (Fig. 33, l. 1 and l. 14 respectively). We note that the use of the ANYPREVOUT flag in all signatures that correspond to transaction inputs that may spend various different transaction outputs ensures that this is possible, as it avoids tying each input to a specific, predefined output. When  $P$  receives (FORCECLOSE) by  $\mathcal{E}$ , it inputs (FORCECLOSE) to  $\text{host}_P$  (Fig. 50, l. 4). As per the Lemma conditions,  $\text{host}_P$  will output (CLOSED). This can happen only when  $\mathcal{G}_{\text{Ledger}}$  contains a suitable output for both  $P$ 's and  $R$ 's channel (Fig. 70, l. 5 and l. 6 respectively).

If the host of  $\text{host}_P$  is "ledger", then the funding output  $o_{1,2} = (c_P + c_{\bar{P}}, 2/\{pk_{P,F}, pk_{\bar{P},F}\})$  for the  $P, \bar{P}$  channel is already on-chain. Regarding the case in which  $\text{host}_P \neq \text{"ledger"}$ , after the funding procedure is complete, the new  $\text{host}_P$  will have as its host the old  $\text{host}_P$  of  $P$ . If the (FORCECLOSE) sequence is initiated, the new  $\text{host}_P$  will follow the same steps that will be described below once the old  $\text{host}_P$  succeeds in closing the lower layer (Fig. 69, l. 6). The old  $\text{host}_P$  however will see no difference in its interface compared to what would happen if  $P$  had received

(FORCECLOSE) before the funding procedure, therefore it will successfully close by the induction hypothesis. Thereafter the process is identical to the one when the old  $\text{host}_P = \text{"ledger"}$ .

Moving on,  $\text{host}_P$  is either able to publish its  $\text{TX}_{1,1}$  and  $B_{1,1}$  (it has necessarily received valid signatures  $\text{sig}(\text{TX}_{1,1}, pk_{\bar{P},F})$  (Fig. 66, l. 43),  $\text{sig}(B_{1,1}, pk_{2,2,1})$  and  $\text{sig}(B_{1,1}, pk_{n,n-1,n})$  (Fig. 64, l. 18) by its counterparty before it moved to the OPEN state for the first time), or the output  $(c_P + c_{\bar{P}}, 2/\{pk_{P,F}, pk_{\bar{P},F}\})$  needed to publish  $\text{TX}_{1,1}$  has already been spent. The only other transactions that can spend it are  $\text{TX}_{2,1}$  and any of  $(\text{TX}_{2,2,k})_{k>2}$ , since these are the only transactions that spend the aforementioned output and that  $\text{host}_P$  has signed with  $sk_{P,F}$  (Fig. 66, ll. 37-41). The output can be also spent by old, revoked commitment transactions, but in that case  $\text{host}_P$  would not have output (CLOSED);  $P$  would have instead detected this triggered by a (CHECK CHAIN FOR CLOSED) message by  $\mathcal{E}$  (Fig. 48) and would have moved to the CLOSED state on its own accord (lack of such a message by  $\mathcal{E}$  would lead  $P$  to become negligent, something that cannot happen according to the Lemma conditions). Every transaction among  $\text{TX}_{1,1}$ ,  $\text{TX}_{2,1}$ ,  $(\text{TX}_{2,2,k})_{k>2}$  has a  $(c_P + c_{\bar{P}} - f, 2/\{pk_{P,F}, pk_{\bar{P},F}\})$  output (Fig. 60, l. 21 and Fig. 59, ll. 41 and 128) which will end up in  $\mathcal{G}_{\text{Ledger}}$  – call this output  $o_P$ .

We will prove that at most  $\sum_{i=2}^{n-1} (t_i + p + s - 1)$  blocks after (FORCECLOSE) is received by  $\bar{P}$ , an output  $o_R$  with  $c_{\text{virt}}$  coins and a  $2/\{pk_{R,F}, pk_{\bar{R},F}\}$  spending condition without or with an expired timelock will be included in  $\mathcal{G}_{\text{Ledger}}$ . In case party  $\bar{P}$  is idle, then  $o_{1,2}$  is consumed by  $\text{TX}_{1,1}$ , its virtual output is spent by  $B_{1,1}$  and the timelock on the output of the latter expires, therefore the required output  $o_R$  is on-chain. In case  $\bar{P}$  is active, exactly one of  $\text{TX}_{2,1}$ ,  $(\text{TX}_{2,2,k})_{k>2}$  or  $(\text{TX}_{2,3,1,k})_{k>2}$  is a descendant of  $o_{1,2}$ ; if the transaction belongs to one of the two last transaction groups (with subscript  $g$ ) then necessarily  $\text{TX}_{1,1}$  is on-chain in some block height  $h$  and given the timelock on the virtual output of  $\text{TX}_{1,1}$ ,  $\bar{P}$ 's transaction can be at most at block height  $h + t_2 + p + s - 1$ . If  $n = 3$  or  $k = n - 1$ , then  $\bar{P}$ 's unique transaction has a bridge output which can be spent only by  $R_g$  or  $B_g$ . The  $P$  has never signed  $R_g$ , so only  $B_g$  can spend it.  $B_g$  has the required output  $o_R$  (without a timelock) and  $P$  publishes  $B_g$  (Fig. 70, l. 6). The rest of the cases are covered by the following sequence of events:

#### Closing sequence

- 1:  $\text{maxDel} \leftarrow t_2 + p + s - 1$  //  $A_2$  is active and the virtual output of  $\text{TX}_{1,1}$  has a timelock of  $t_2$
- 2:  $i \leftarrow 3$
- 3: **loop**
- 4:   **if**  $A_i$  is idle **then**
- 5:     The timelock on the virtual output of the transaction published by  $A_{i-1}$  expires and therefore the required  $o_R$  is on-chain
- 6:   **else** //  $A_i$  publishes a transaction that is a descendant of  $o_{1,2}$
- 7:      $\text{maxDel} \leftarrow \text{maxDel} + t_i + p + s - 1$
- 8:     The published transaction can be of the form  $\text{TX}_{i,2,2}$  or  $(\text{TX}_{i,3,2,k})_{k>i}$  as it spends the virtual output which is encumbered with a public key controlled by  $R$  and  $R$  has



```

only signed these transactions
9:   if  $i = n - 1$  or  $k \geq n - 1$  then // The interval
contains all intermediaries
10:   The virtual output of the transaction is not
timelocked and is only spendable by a bridge tx, which  $R$ 
publishes (Fig. 70, l. 6) and which has a  $2/\{pk_{R,F}, pk_{\bar{R},F}\}$ 
spending method, therefore it is the required  $o_R$ 
11:   else // At least one intermediary is not in the interval
12:   if the transaction is  $TX_{i,3,2,k}$  then  $i \leftarrow k$  else
 $i \leftarrow i + 1$ 
13:   end if
14:   end if
15: end loop
16: //  $\maxDel \leq \sum_{i=2}^{n-1} (t_i + p + s - 1)$ 

```

Figure 73

In every case  $o_P$  and  $o_R$  end up on-chain in at most  $s$  and  $\sum_{i=2}^{n-1} (t_i + p + s - 1)$  blocks respectively from the moment (FORCECLOSE) is received. The output  $o_P$  can be spent either by  $C_{P,i}$  or  $C_{\bar{P},i}$ . Both these transactions have a  $(c_P - f, pk_{P,out})$  output. This output of  $C_{P,i}$  is timelocked, but the alternative spending method cannot be used as  $P$  never signed a transaction that uses it (as it is reserved for revocation, which has not taken place yet in this virtualisation layer). We have now proven that if  $P$  completes the funding of a new channel then it can close its channel for a  $(c_P - f, pk_{P,out})$  output that is a descendant of an output with spending method  $2/\{pk_{P,F}, pk_{\bar{P},F}\}$  and that lower bound of value holds for the duration of the funding procedure, i.e., we have proven the first claim of the first bullet.

We will now prove that the newly funded party  $R$  can close its channel securely. After  $R$  receives (FUNDED,  $host_P$ , ...) by  $P$  and before moving to the OPEN state, it receives  $sig_{\bar{R},C,0} = sig(C_{R,0}, pk_{\bar{R},F})$  and sends  $sig_{R,C,0} = sig(C_{R,0}, pk_{R,F})$ . Both these transactions spend  $o_R$ . As we showed before, if  $R$  receives (FORCECLOSE) by  $\mathcal{E}$  then  $o_R$  eventually ends up on-chain. After receiving (CLOSED) from  $host_P$ ,  $R$  attempts to add  $C_{R,0}$  to  $\mathcal{G}_{Ledger}$ , which may only fail if  $C_{R,0}$  ends up on-chain instead. Similar to the case of  $P$ , both these transactions have an  $(f, pk_{R,out})$  output. This output of  $C_{R,0}$  is timelocked, but the alternative spending method cannot be used as  $R$  never signed a transaction that uses it (as it is reserved for revocation, which has not taken place yet) so the timelock will expire and the desired spending method will be available. We have now proven that if  $R$ 's channel is funded to completion (i.e.,  $R$  moves to the OPEN state for the first time) then it can close its channel for a  $(f, pk_{R,out})$  output that is a descendant of  $o_R$ . We have therefore proven the first bullet.

We now move on to the second bullet. In case  $P$  is the fundee (i.e.,  $i = n$ ), then the same arguments as in the previous bullet hold here with "WAITING FOR INBOUND REVOCATION" replaced with "WAITING FOR OUTBOUND REVOCATION",  $o_{1,2}$  with  $o_{n-1,n}$ ,  $TX_{1,1}$  with  $TX_{n,1}$ ,  $B_{1,1}$  with  $B_{n,1}$ ,  $TX_{2,1}$  with  $TX_{n-1,1}$ ,  $B_{2,1}$  with  $B_{n-1,1}$ ,  $(TX_{2,2,k})_{k>2}$  with  $(TX_{n-1,2,k})_{k<n-1}$ ,  $(B_{2,2,k})_{k>2}$  with  $(B_{n-1,2,k})_{k<n-1}$ ,

$(TX_{2,3,1,k})_{k>2}$  with  $(TX_{n-1,3,n,k})_{k<n-1}$ ,  $(B_{2,3,1,k})_{k>2}$  with  $(B_{n-1,3,n,k})_{k<n-1}$ ,  $t_2$  with  $t_{n-1}$ ,  $TX_{i,3,2,k}$  with  $TX_{i,3,n-1,k}$ ,  $B_{i,3,2,k}$  with  $B_{i,3,n-1,k}$ ,  $i$  is initialized to  $n - 2$  in l. 2 of Fig. 73,  $i$  is decremented instead of incremented in l. 12 of the same Figure and  $f$  is replaced with 0. This is so because these two cases are symmetric.

In case  $P$  is not the fundee ( $1 < i < n$ ), then we only need to prove the first statement of the second bullet. By the induction hypothesis and since sibling is kindred, we know that both  $P$ 's and sibling's funding outputs either are or can be eventually put on-chain and that  $P$ 's funding output has at least  $c_P = \sum_{s \in C} \sum_{x \in s} x$  coins. If  $P$  is on the "left" of its sibling (i.e., there is an untrusted party that sent the (VIRTUALISING, ...) message to  $P$  which triggered the latter to move to the VIRTUALISING state and to send a (VIRTUALISING, ...) message to its own sibling), the "left" funding output  $o_{left}$  (the one held with the untrusted party to the left) can be spent by one of  $TX_{i,1}$ ,  $(TX_{i,2,k})_{k>i}$ ,  $TX_{i-1,1}$ , or  $(TX_{i-1,2,k})_{k<i-1}$ , as these are the only transactions that  $P$  has signed with  $sk_{P,F}$ . All these transactions have a  $(c_P + c_{\bar{P}} - f, 2/\{pk_{P,F'}, pk_{\bar{P},F'}\})$  output that can in turn be spent by either  $C_{P,0}$  or  $C_{\bar{P},0}$ , both of which have an output of value  $c_P$  and a  $pk_{P,out}$  spending method and no other spending method can be used (as  $P$  has not signed the "revocation" spending method of  $C_{P,0}$ ).

In the case that  $P$  is to the right of its sibling (i.e.,  $P$  receives by sibling the (VIRTUALISING, ...) message that causes  $P$ 's transition to the VIRTUALISING state), the "right" funding output  $o_{right}$  (the one held with the untrusted party to the right) can be spent by one of  $TX_{i,1}$ ,  $(TX_{i,2,k})_{k<i}$ ,  $TX_{i+1,1}$ , or  $(TX_{i+1,2,k})_{k>i+1}$ , as these are the only transactions that  $P$  has signed with  $sk_{P,F}$ . All these transactions have a  $(c_P + c_{\bar{P}} - f, 2/\{pk_{P,F'}, pk_{\bar{P},F'}\})$  output that can in turn be spent by either  $C_{P,0}$  or  $C_{\bar{P},0}$ , both of which have an output of value  $c_P - f$  and a  $pk_{P,out}$  spending method and no other spending method can be used (as  $P$  has not signed the "revocation" spending method of  $C_{P,0}$ ).  $P$  can get the remaining  $f$  coins as follows:  $TX_{i,1}$  and all of  $(TX_{i,2,k})_{k<i}$  already have an  $(f, pk_{P,out})$  output (Note that this output is also encumbered with a timelock, but the alternative spending method cannot be used as  $host_P$  has not signed the required revocation transaction). If instead  $TX_{i+1,1}$  or one of  $(TX_{i+1,2,k})_{k>i+1}$  spends  $o_{right}$ , then  $P$  will publish  $TX_{i,2,i+1}$  or  $TX_{i,2,k_2}$  respectively if  $o_{left}$  is unspent, otherwise  $o_{left}$  is spent by one of  $TX_{i-1,1}$  or  $(TX_{i-1,2,k_1})_{k_1<i-1}$  in which case  $P$  will publish one of  $TX_{i,3,k_1,i+1}$ ,  $TX_{i,3,i-1,k_2}$ ,  $TX_{i,3,i-1,i+1}$  or  $TX_{i,3,k_1,k_2}$ . In particular,  $TX_{i,3,k_1,i+1}$  is published if  $TX_{i-1,2,k_1}$  and  $TX_{i+1,1}$  are on-chain,  $TX_{i,3,i-1,k_2}$  is published if  $TX_{i-1,1}$  and  $TX_{i+1,2,k_2}$  are on-chain,  $TX_{i,3,i-1,i+1}$  is published if  $TX_{i-1,1}$  and  $TX_{i+1,1}$  are on-chain, or  $TX_{i,3,k_1,k_2}$  is published if  $TX_{i-1,2,k_1}$  and  $TX_{i+1,2,k_2}$  are on-chain. All these transactions include an  $(f, pk_{P,out})$  output for which the revocation-based spending method cannot be used since  $host_P$  has not produced the corresponding signature for the revocation transaction. We have therefore covered all cases and proven the second bullet.

We now focus on the third bullet. Once more the induction hypothesis guarantees that before (CHECK COOP CLOSE, ...) was received,  $P$  could close the channel resulting in on-chain outputs exclusively spendable or already spent by  $pk_{P,out}$  that



are descendants of an output  $o_F$  with a  $2/\{pk_{P,F}, pk_{\bar{P},F}\}$  spending method that have a sum value of  $c_P = \sum_{s \in C} \sum_{x \in s} x$ .

When  $P$  receives (CHECK COOP CLOSE, ...), it moves to the COOP CLOSING state before returning to the OPEN state. It verifies the counterparty's signature on the new commitment transaction  $C_{P,i+1}$ , (Fig. 71, l. 16) which spends the latest old funding output (Fig. 71, l. 14), effectively removing one virtualisation layer. In  $C_{P,i+1}$   $P$  owns  $c'_2$  more coins than before that moment (Fig. 71, l. 15). It then signs the corresponding commitment transaction for the counterparty (Fig. 71, l. 91) and expects a valid signature for the revocation transaction of the old commitment transaction of the counterparty (Fig. 71, l. 126). Once these are received,  $P$  transitions to the OPEN state. If the  $o_F$  output is spent while  $P$  is in the COOP CLOSING state, it can be spent by one of  $C_{P,i+1}$  or some of  $(C_{\bar{P},j})_{0 \leq j \leq i+1}$ . If it is spent by  $C_{P,i+1}$  or  $C_{\bar{P},i+1}$ , then these two transactions have a  $(c_P + c'_2, pk_{P,out})$  output. (Note that the former is encumbered with a timelock, but the alternative spending method cannot be used as  $P$  has not signed  $R_{\bar{P},i+1}$ .) If it is spent by  $C_{\bar{P},i}$  then a  $(c_P, pk_{P,out})$  output becomes available instead, therefore  $P$  can still get the  $c_P$  coins that correspond to the previous state. If any of  $(C_{\bar{P},j})_{0 \leq j < i}$  spends this or another of our past funding outputs then it makes available a  $pk_{P,out}$  output with the coins that  $P$  had at state  $j$  and additionally  $P$  can publish  $R_{P,j}$  that spends  $\bar{P}$ 's output of  $C_{\bar{P},j}$  and obtain the entirety of  $\bar{P}$ 's coins at state  $j$  for a total of  $c_P + c_{\bar{P}}$  coins. What is more, if  $o_F$  is spent by any virtual transaction, then  $host_P$  will punish the publisher of such transaction with the corresponding virtual revocation transaction (Fig. 71, l. 35, l. 38, l. 62, l. 110, l. 111 and l. 114) at the latest when  $P$  receives (CHECK CHAIN FOR CLOSED) (Fig. 48, l. 17) – note that the latter message is received periodically by  $P$ , since it is a non-negligent party. The virtual revocation transaction gives a sum equal to the entirety of the channel's funds to  $P$ . Therefore in every case  $P$  can claim at least  $c_P$  coins. In the case that  $P$  instead subsequently receives a valid signature to  $R_{P,i}$  (Fig. 71, l. 126) and moves to the OPEN state, the above analysis of what can happen when  $o_F$  is spent holds similarly, with the difference that if  $\bar{P}$  spends  $o_F$  with  $C_{\bar{P},i}$  now  $P$  can publish  $R_{P,i}$  which gives  $P$  the coins of  $\bar{P}$ . Therefore with this difference  $P$  is now guaranteed to gain at least  $c_P + c'_2$  coins upon channel closure. We have therefore proven the third bullet.

We now focus on the fourth bullet. Once more the induction hypothesis guarantees that before (COOP CLOSE SIGN COMM, ...) was received,  $P$  could close the channel resulting in on-chain outputs exclusively spendable or already spent by  $pk_{P,out}$  that are descendants of an output  $o_F$  with a  $2/\{pk_{P,F}, pk_{\bar{P},F}\}$  spending method that have a sum value of  $c_P = \sum_{s \in C} \sum_{x \in s} x$ .

When  $P$  receives (COOP CLOSE SIGN COMM, ...), it moves to the COOP CLOSING state before returning to the OPEN state. It signs the new commitment transaction for the counterparty (Fig. 71, l. 27) which spends the latest old funding output (Fig. 71, l. 25), effectively removing one virtualisation layer. In  $C_{P,i+1}$   $P$  owns  $c_{virt} - c'_1$  less coins than before that moment (Fig. 71, l. 26) – note that  $P$  now lost access to  $c_{virt}$  coins from the refund output of its virtual transactions. It then verifies the counterparty's signatures on the corresponding new local commitment transaction  $C_{P,i+1}$ , (Fig. 71, l. 46) and on the revocation transaction of the old commitment transaction of

the counterparty (Fig. 71, l. 49). Once these are received,  $P$  transitions to the OPEN state. If the  $o_F$  output is spent while  $P$  is in the COOP CLOSING state, it can be spent by one of  $C_{P,i+1}$  or some of  $(C_{\bar{P},j})_{0 \leq j \leq i+1}$ . If it is spent by  $C_{P,i+1}$  or  $C_{\bar{P},i+1}$ , then these two transactions have a  $(c_P + c'_1, pk_{P,out})$  output. (Note that the former is encumbered with a timelock, but the alternative spending method cannot be used as  $P$  has not signed  $R_{\bar{P},i+1}$ .) If it is spent by  $C_{\bar{P},i}$  then a  $(c_P, pk_{P,out})$  output becomes available instead, therefore  $P$  can still get the  $c_P$  coins that correspond to the previous state. If any of  $(C_{\bar{P},j})_{0 \leq j < i}$  spends this or another of our past funding outputs then it makes available a  $pk_{P,out}$  output with the coins that  $P$  had at state  $j$  and additionally  $P$  can publish  $R_{P,j}$  that spends  $\bar{P}$ 's output of  $C_{\bar{P},j}$  and obtain the entirety of  $\bar{P}$ 's coins at state  $j$  for a total of  $c_P + c_{\bar{P}}$  coins. Similarly to the previous bullet, if  $o_F$  is spent by any virtual transaction, then  $host_P$  will punish the publisher and  $P$  will obtain a sum equal to the entirety of the channel's funds. Therefore in every case  $P$  can claim at least  $c_P$  coins. In the case that  $P$  instead subsequently receives a valid signature to  $R_{P,i}$  (Fig. 71, l. 126) and moves to the OPEN state, the above analysis of what can happen when  $o_F$  holds similarly, with the difference that if  $\bar{P}$  spends  $o_F$  with  $C_{\bar{P},i}$  now  $P$  can publish  $R_{P,i}$  which gives  $P$  the coins of  $\bar{P}$ . Therefore with this difference  $P$  is now guaranteed to gain at least  $c_P - c_{virt} + c'_1$  coins upon channel closure. This proves the first claim of the fourth bullet.

Regarding the second claim, we observe that  $P$  can only move to the OPEN state if previously a local kindred LN ITI  $R$  moves to the OPEN state as well. Via direct application of the previous claim of the currently analysed bullet,  $R$  has gained  $c'_2$  coins in the process, therefore guaranteeing that  $P$  and  $R$  have on aggregate access to the same number of coins as before the cooperative closing. What is more, throughout the cooperative closing process both parties had access to at least  $c_P$  and  $c_R$  coins respectively, thus ensuring that no loss of coins is possible. We have now proven the fourth bullet.

Moving on to the fifth bullet, the same reasoning as that of the treatment of the previous bullet holds, albeit with the guest's signature verifications as they appear in Fig. 55.

The first claim of the sixth bullet holds due to an argument identical to that provided for the third bullet, since in both cases the relevant parts of the protocol execution are the same. Note that funder's signature for the revocation of the last commitment transaction of the virtual channel has not been yet verified, but this is of no consequence for our balance as all other revocation signatures have been already verified and the connection with the funder has been severed due to the successful cooperative closing.

Regarding now the seventh bullet, once again the induction hypothesis guarantees that before (PAY,  $d$ ) was received,  $P$  could close the channel resulting in on-chain outputs exclusively spendable or already spent by  $pk_{P,out}$  that are descendants of an output with a  $2/\{pk_{P,F}, pk_{\bar{P},F}\}$  spending method that have a sum value of  $c_P = \sum_{s \in C} \sum_{x \in s} x$ . (Note that  $\sum_{s \in C'} \sum_{x \in s} x = d + \sum_{s \in C} \sum_{x \in s} x$ .) When  $P$  receives (PAY,  $d$ ) while in the OPEN state, it moves to the WAITING FOR COMMITMENT SIGNED state before returning to the OPEN state. It signs (Fig. 43, l. 2) the new commitment transaction

$C_{\bar{P},i+1}$  in which the counterparty owns  $d$  more coins than before that moment (Fig. 43, l. 1), sends the signature to the counterparty (Fig. 43, l. 5) and expects valid signatures on its own updated commitment transaction (Fig. 44, l. 1) and the revocation transaction for the old commitment transaction of the counterparty (Fig. 44, l. 3). Upon verifying them,  $P$  transitions to the OPEN state. Note that if the counterparty does not respond or if it responds with missing/invalid signatures, either  $P$  can close the channel with the old commitment transaction  $C_{P,i}$  exactly like before the update started (as it has not yet sent the signature for the old revocation transaction), or the counterparty will close the channel either with the new or with the old commitment transaction. In all cases in which validation fails and the channel closes, there is an output with a  $pk_{P,\text{out}}$  spending method and no other useable spending method that carries at least  $c_P - d$  coins. Only if the verification succeeds does  $P$  sign (Fig. 44, l. 5) and send (Fig. 44, l. 17) the counterparty's revocation transaction for  $P$ 's previous commitment transaction.

Similarly to previous bullets, if  $\text{host}_P \neq \text{"ledger"}$  the funding output can be put on-chain, otherwise the funding output is already on-chain. In both cases, since the closing procedure continues, one of  $C_{P,i+1}$ ,  $(C_{\bar{P},j})_{0 \leq j \leq i+1}$  will end up on-chain. If  $C_{\bar{P},j}$  for some  $j < i+1$  is on-chain, then  $P$  submits  $R_{P,j}$  (we discussed how  $P$  obtained  $R_{P,i}$  and the rest of the cases are covered by induction) and takes the entire value of the channel which is at least  $c_P - d$ . If  $C_{\bar{P},i+1}$  is on-chain, it has a  $(c_P - d, pk_{P,\text{out}})$  output. If  $C_{P,i+1}$  is on-chain, it has an output of value  $c_P - d$ , a timelocked  $pk_{P,\text{out}}$  spending method and a non-timelocked spending method that needs the signature made with  $sk_{P,R}$  on  $R_{\bar{P},i+1}$ .  $P$  however has not generated that signature, therefore this spending method cannot be used and the timelock will expire, therefore in all cases outputs that descend from the funding output, can be spent exclusively by  $pk_{P,\text{out}}$  and carry at least  $c_P - d$  coins are put on-chain. We have proven the seventh bullet.

For the eighth and last bullet, again by the induction hypothesis, before (GET PAID,  $e$ ) was received  $P$  could close the channel resulting in on-chain outputs exclusively spendable or already spent by  $pk_{P,\text{out}}$  that are descendants of an output  $o_F$  with a  $2/\{pk_{P,F}, pk_{\bar{P},F}\}$  spending method and have a sum value of  $c_P = \sum_{s \in C} \sum_{x \in s} x$ . (Note that  $e + \sum_{s \in C'} \sum_{x \in s} x = \sum_{s \in C} \sum_{x \in s} x$  and that  $o_F$  either is already on-chain or can be eventually put on-chain as we have argued in the previous bullets by the induction hypothesis.) When  $P$  receives (GET PAID,  $e$ ) while in the OPEN state, if the balance of the counterparty is enough it moves to the WAITING TO GET PAID state (Fig. 46, l. 6). If subsequently it receives a valid signature for  $C_{P,i+1}$  (Fig. 43, l. 9) which is a commitment transaction that can spend the  $o_F$  output and gives to  $P$  an additional  $e$  coins compared to  $C_{P,i}$ . Subsequently  $P$ 's state transitions to WAITING FOR PAY REVOCATION and sends signatures for  $C_{\bar{P},i+1}$  and  $R_{\bar{P},i}$  to  $\bar{P}$ . If the  $o_F$  output is spent while  $P$  is in the latter state, it can be spent by one of  $C_{P,i+1}$  or  $(C_{\bar{P},j})_{0 \leq j \leq i+1}$ . If it is spent by  $C_{P,i+1}$  or  $C_{\bar{P},i+1}$ , then these two transactions have a  $(c_P + e, pk_{P,\text{out}})$  output. (Note that the former is encumbered with a timelock, but the alternative spending method cannot be used as  $P$  has not signed  $R_{\bar{P},i+1}$ .) If it is spent by  $C_{\bar{P},i}$  then a  $(c_P, pk_{P,\text{out}})$  output becomes available instead, therefore  $P$  can still get the  $c_P$  coins that correspond to the previous state. If any

of  $(C_{\bar{P},j})_{0 \leq j < i}$  spends  $o_F$  then it makes available a  $pk_{P,\text{out}}$  output with the coins that  $P$  had at state  $j$  and additionally  $P$  can publish  $R_{P,j}$  that spends  $\bar{P}$ 's output of  $C_{\bar{P},j}$  and obtain the entirety of  $\bar{P}$ 's coins at state  $j$  for a total of  $c_P + c_{\bar{P}}$  coins. Therefore in every case  $P$  can claim at least  $c_P$  coins. In the case that  $P$  instead subsequently receives a valid signature to  $R_{P,i}$  (Fig. 44, l. 20) it finally moves to the OPEN state once again. In this state the above analysis of what can happen when  $o_F$  holds similarly, with the difference that if  $\bar{P}$  spends  $o_F$  with  $C_{\bar{P},i}$  now  $P$  can publish  $R_{P,i}$  which gives  $P$  the coins of  $\bar{P}$ . Therefore with this difference  $P$  is now guaranteed to gain at least  $c_P + e$  coins upon channel closure. We have therefore proven the eighth bullet and with it the first bullet of the Lemma.

We now turn to proving the second bullet of the Lemma. We will take advantage of the results that have been derived earlier in this proof. If  $P$  is the funder of the virtual channel in process of cooperatively closing, it ensures that  $c'_1 = c_P \wedge c'_2 = c_{\bar{P}}$  (Fig. 55, l. 4). If  $P$  is the fundee, it requests that the virtual channel be closed with the current honest coin balance (Fig. 54, l. 6), in which case it is  $c'_1 = c_{\bar{P}} \wedge c'_2 = c_P$ . Due to the arguments proving the first Lemma bullet, we know that

$$c_P = \sum_{s \in C} \sum_{x \in s} x \geq \phi \cdot c - \sum_{i=1}^n f_i - \sum_{i=1}^m d_i + \sum_{i=1}^l e_i + \sum_{i=1}^j r_i + \sum_{i=1}^k l_i. \quad (5)$$

Just before the splitting of the two alternative scenarios, party  $S$  is entitled to  $c_b$  coins, since (i) in the first scenario all other parties honestly follow the protocol and thus they do not lose any coins to  $S$  and (ii) no action during the first scenario causes any transfer of coins. As we saw previously, if  $P$  transitions to the COOP CLOSED state, then  $S$  has also transitioned from the COOP CLOSING to the OPEN state and benefitted from an increase of the coins it can exclusively spend by  $c_P$ . It therefore holds that the difference of the coins  $c_t - c_b$  that  $P$  owns at the end of the two scenarios is exactly  $c_P$  and due to (5) we can directly derive the required (4). The Lemma has now been proven. ■

**Lemma 8 (Ideal world balance):** Consider an ideal world execution with functionality  $\mathcal{G}_{\text{Chan}}$  and simulator  $\mathcal{S}$ . Let  $P \in \{\text{Alice}, \text{Bob}\}$  one of the two parties of  $\mathcal{G}_{\text{Chan}}$ . Assume that all of the following are true:

- $\text{State}_P \neq \text{IGNORED}$ ,
- $P$  has transitioned to the OPEN State at least once. Additionally, if  $P = \text{Alice}$ , it has received (OPEN,  $c, \dots$ ) by  $\mathcal{E}$  prior to transitioning to the OPEN State,
- $P$  [has received (FUND ME,  $f_i, \dots$ ) as input by another  $\mathcal{G}_{\text{Chan/LN ITI}}$  while  $\text{State}_P$  was OPEN and  $P$  subsequently transitioned to OPEN State]  $n$  times,
- $\mathcal{G}_{\text{Ledger}}$  [has received (COOP CLOSING,  $P, r_i$ ) by  $\mathcal{S}$  while  $\text{State}_P$  was OPEN and subsequently  $P$  transitioned to OPEN State]  $k$  times,
- $P$  [has received (PAY,  $d_i$ ) by  $\mathcal{E}$  while  $\text{State}_P$  was OPEN and  $P$  subsequently transitioned to OPEN State]  $m$  times,
- $P$  [has received (GET PAID,  $e_i$ ) by  $\mathcal{E}$  while  $\text{State}_P$  was OPEN and  $P$  subsequently transitioned to OPEN State]  $l$  times.

Let  $\phi = 1$  if  $P = \text{Alice}$ , or  $\phi = 0$  if  $P = \text{Bob}$ . If  $\mathcal{G}_{\text{Chan}}$  receives  $(\text{FORCECLOSE}, P)$  by  $\mathcal{S}$ , then the following holds with overwhelming probability on the security parameter:

$$\text{balance}_P = \phi \cdot c - \sum_{i=1}^n f_i - \sum_{i=1}^m d_i + \sum_{i=1}^l e_i + \sum_{i=1}^k r_i \quad (6)$$

*Proof of Lemma 8:* We will prove the Lemma by following the evolution of the  $\text{balance}_P$  variable.

- When  $\mathcal{G}_{\text{Chan}}$  is activated for the first time, it sets  $\text{balance}_P \leftarrow 0$  (Fig. 17, l. 1).
- If  $P = \text{Alice}$  and it receives  $(\text{OPEN}, c, \dots)$  by  $\mathcal{E}$ , it stores  $c$  (Fig. 17, l. 11). If later  $\text{State}_P$  becomes OPEN,  $\mathcal{G}_{\text{Chan}}$  sets  $\text{balance}_P \leftarrow c$  (Fig. 17, ll. 14 or 34). In contrast, if  $P = \text{Bob}$ , it is  $\text{balance}_P = 0$  until at least the first transition of  $\text{State}_P$  to OPEN (Fig. 17).
- Every time that  $P$  receives input  $(\text{FUND ME}, f_i, \dots)$  by another party while  $\text{State}_P = \text{OPEN}$ ,  $P$  stores  $f_i$  (Fig. 19, l. 1). The next time  $\text{State}_P$  transitions to OPEN (if such a transition happens),  $\text{balance}_P$  is decremented by  $f_i$  (Fig. 19, l. 27). Therefore, if this cycle happens  $n \geq 0$  times,  $\text{balance}_P$  will be decremented by  $\sum_{i=1}^n f_i$  in total.
- Every time  $\mathcal{G}_{\text{Ledger}}$  receives  $(\text{COOP CLOSING}, P, r_i)$  by  $\mathcal{S}$  while  $\text{State}_P$  is OPEN,  $r_i$  is stored (Fig. 21, l. 1). The next time  $\text{State}_P$  transitions to OPEN (if such a transition happens),  $\text{balance}_P$  is incremented by  $r_i$  (Fig. 21, l. 9). Therefore, if this cycle happens  $k \geq 0$  times,  $\text{balance}_P$  will be incremented by  $\sum_{i=1}^k r_i$  in total.
- Every time  $P$  receives input  $(\text{PAY}, d_i)$  by  $\mathcal{E}$  while  $\text{State}_P = \text{OPEN}$ ,  $d_i$  is stored (Fig. 18, l. 2). The next time  $\text{State}_P$  transitions to OPEN (if such a transition happens),  $\text{balance}_P$  is decremented by  $d_i$  (Fig. 18, l. 13). Therefore, if this cycle happens  $m \geq 0$  times,  $\text{balance}_P$  will be decremented by  $\sum_{i=1}^m d_i$  in total.
- Every time  $P$  receives input  $(\text{GET PAID}, e_i)$  by  $\mathcal{E}$  while  $\text{State}_P = \text{OPEN}$ ,  $e_i$  is stored (Fig. 18, l. 7). The next time  $\text{State}_P$  transitions to OPEN (if such a transition happens)  $\text{balance}_P$  is incremented by  $e_i$  (Fig. 18, l. 19). Therefore, if this cycle happens  $l \geq 0$  times,  $\text{balance}_P$  will be incremented by  $\sum_{i=1}^l e_i$  in total.

On aggregate, after the above are completed and then  $\mathcal{G}_{\text{Chan}}$  receives  $(\text{FORCECLOSE}, P)$  by  $\mathcal{S}$ , it is  $\text{balance}_P = c -$

$$\sum_{i=1}^n f_i - \sum_{i=1}^m d_i + \sum_{i=1}^l e_i + \sum_{i=1}^k r_i \text{ if } P = \text{Alice}, \text{ or else if } P = \text{Bob},$$

$$\text{balance}_P = - \sum_{i=1}^n f_i - \sum_{i=1}^m d_i + \sum_{i=1}^l e_i + \sum_{i=1}^k r_i. \quad \blacksquare$$

*Proof of Lemma 3:* We prove the Lemma in two steps. We first show that if the conditions of Lemma 8 hold, then the conditions of Lemma 7 for the real world execution with protocol LN and the same  $\mathcal{E}$  and  $\mathcal{A}$  hold as well for the same  $k, m, n$  and  $l$  values.

For  $\text{State}_P$  to become IGNORED, either  $\mathcal{S}$  has to send  $(\text{BECAME CORRUPTED OR NEGLIGENT}, P)$  or  $\text{host}_P$  must output  $(\text{ENABLER USED REVOCATION})$  to  $\mathcal{G}_{\text{Chan}}$  (Fig. 17, l. 5).

The first case only happens when either  $P$  receives (CORRUPT) by  $\mathcal{A}$  (Fig. 31, l. 1), which means that the simulated  $P$  is not honest anymore, or when  $P$  becomes negligent (Fig. 31, l. 4), which means that the first condition of Lemma 7 is violated. In the second case, it is  $\text{host}_P \neq \mathcal{G}_{\text{Ledger}}$  and the state of  $\text{host}_P$  is GUEST PUNISHED (Fig. 72, ll. 1 or 12), so in case  $P$  receives (FORCECLOSE) by  $\mathcal{E}$  the output of  $\text{host}_P$  will be (GUEST PUNISHED) (Fig. 69, l. 4). In all cases, some condition of Lemma 7 is violated.

For  $\text{State}_P$  to become OPEN at least once, the following sequence of events must take place (Fig. 17): If  $P = \text{Alice}$ , it must receive (INIT,  $pk$ ) by  $\mathcal{E}$  when  $\text{State}_P = \text{UNINIT}$ , then either receive  $(\text{OPEN}, c, \mathcal{G}_{\text{Ledger}}, \dots)$  by  $\mathcal{E}$  and (BASE OPEN) by  $\mathcal{S}$  or  $(\text{OPEN}, c, \text{hops} (\neq \mathcal{G}_{\text{Ledger}}), \dots)$  by  $\mathcal{E}$ , (FUNDED, HOST, ...) by  $\text{hops}[0].\text{left}$  and (VIRTUAL OPEN) by  $\mathcal{S}$ . In either case,  $\mathcal{S}$  only sends its message only if all its simulated honest parties move to the OPEN state (Fig. 31, l. 10), therefore if the second condition of Lemma 8 holds and  $P = \text{Alice}$ , then the second condition of Lemma 7 holds as well. The same line of reasoning can be used to deduce that if  $P = \text{Bob}$ , then  $\text{State}_P$  will become OPEN for the first time only if all honest simulated parties move to the OPEN state, therefore once more the second condition of Lemma 8 holds only if the second condition of Lemma 7 holds as well. We also observe that, if both parties are honest, they will transition to the OPEN state simultaneously.

Regarding the third Lemma 8 condition, we assume (and will later show) that if both parties are honest and the state of one is OPEN, then the state of the other is also OPEN. Each time  $P$  receives input  $(\text{FUND ME}, f, \dots)$  by  $R \in \{\mathcal{G}_{\text{Chan}}, \text{LN}\}$ ,  $\text{State}_P$  transitions to PENDING FUND, subsequently when a command to define a new VIRT ITI through  $P$  is intercepted by  $\mathcal{G}_{\text{Chan}}$ ,  $\text{State}_P$  transitions to TENTATIVE FUND and afterwards when  $\mathcal{S}$  sends (FUND) to  $\mathcal{G}_{\text{Chan}}$ ,  $\text{State}_P$  transitions to SYNC FUND. In parallel, if  $\text{State}_{\bar{P}} = \text{IGNORED}$ , then  $\text{State}_P$  transitions directly back to OPEN. If on the other hand  $\text{State}_{\bar{P}} = \text{OPEN}$  and  $\mathcal{G}_{\text{Chan}}$  intercepts a similar VIRT ITI definition command through  $\bar{P}$ ,  $\text{State}_{\bar{P}}$  transitions to TENTATIVE HELP FUND. On receiving the aforementioned (FUND) message by  $\mathcal{S}$  and given that  $\text{State}_{\bar{P}} = \text{TENTATIVE HELP FUND}$ ,  $\mathcal{G}_{\text{Chan}}$  also sets  $\text{State}_{\bar{P}}$  to SYNC HELP FUND. Then both  $\text{State}_{\bar{P}}$  and  $\text{State}_P$  transition simultaneously to OPEN (Fig. 19). This sequence of events may repeat any  $n \geq 0$  times. We observe that throughout these steps, honest simulated  $P$  has received (FUND ME,  $f, \dots$ ) and that  $\mathcal{S}$  only sends (FUND) when all honest simulated parties have transitioned to the OPEN state (Fig. 31, l. 18 and Fig. 41, l. 12), so the third condition of Lemma 7 holds with the same  $n$  as that of Lemma 8.

Moving on to the fourth Lemma 8 condition, we again assume that if both parties are honest and the state of one is OPEN, then the state of the other is also OPEN. Each time  $\mathcal{G}_{\text{Chan}}$  receives  $(\text{COOP CLOSING}, P, r)$  by  $\mathcal{S}$ ,  $\text{State}_P$  transitions to COOP CLOSING and subsequently when  $\mathcal{S}$  sends  $(\text{COOP CLOSED}, P)$  to  $\mathcal{G}_{\text{Chan}}$ , if  $\text{layer}_P = 0$  then  $\text{State}_P$  transitions to COOP CLOSED, else  $\text{State}_P$  transitions to OPEN. This sequence of events may repeat any  $k \geq 0$  times. We observe that throughout these steps, honest simulated  $P$  has transitioned to the COOP CLOSING state and that  $\mathcal{S}$  only sends  $(\text{COOP CLOSED}, P)$  when honest simulated  $P$  transitions to either OPEN or COOP CLOSED state, so the sum of  $j$  (from the



fourth condition of Lemma 7) plus  $k$  (from the fifth condition of Lemma 7) is equal to the  $k$  of Lemma 8.

Regarding the sixth Lemma 8 condition, we again assume that if both parties are honest and the state of one is OPEN, then the state of the other is also OPEN. Each time  $P$  receives input (PAY,  $d$ ) by  $\mathcal{E}$ ,  $State_P$  transitions to TENTATIVE PAY and subsequently when  $\mathcal{S}$  sends (PAY) to  $\mathcal{G}_{\text{Chan}}$ ,  $State_P$  transitions to (SYNC PAY,  $d$ ). In parallel, if  $State_{\bar{P}} = \text{IGNORED}$ , then  $State_P$  transitions directly back to OPEN. If on the other hand  $State_{\bar{P}} = \text{OPEN}$  and  $\mathcal{G}_{\text{Chan}}$  receives (GET PAID,  $d$ ) by  $\mathcal{E}$  addressed to  $\bar{P}$ ,  $State_{\bar{P}}$  transitions to TENTATIVE GET PAID. On receiving the aforementioned (PAY) message by  $\mathcal{S}$  and given that  $State_{\bar{P}} = \text{TENTATIVE GET PAID}$ ,  $\mathcal{G}_{\text{Chan}}$  also sets  $State_{\bar{P}}$  to SYNC GET PAID. Then both  $State_P$  and  $State_{\bar{P}}$  transition simultaneously to OPEN (Fig. 18). This sequence of events may repeat any  $m \geq 0$  times. We observe that throughout these steps, honest simulated  $P$  has received (PAY,  $d$ ) and that  $\mathcal{S}$  only sends (PAY) when all honest simulated parties have completed sending or receiving the payment (Fig. 31, l. 16), so the sixth condition of Lemma 7 holds with the same  $m$  as that of Lemma 8. As far as the seventh condition of Lemma 8 goes, we observe that this case is symmetric to the one discussed for its sixth condition above if we swap  $P$  and  $\bar{P}$ , therefore we deduce that if Lemma 8 holds with some  $l$ , then Lemma 7 holds with the same  $l$ .

As promised, we here argue that if both parties are honest and one party moves to the OPEN state, then the other party will move to the OPEN state as well. We already saw that the first time one party moves to the OPEN state, it will happen simultaneously with the same transition for the other party. We also saw that, when a party transitions from the SYNC HELP FUND or the SYNC FUND state to the OPEN state, then the other party will also transition to the OPEN state simultaneously. Additionally, we saw that if one party transitions from the COOP CLOSING state to the OPEN state, the other party will also transition to the OPEN state simultaneously. Furthermore, we saw that if one party transitions from the SYNC PAY or the SYNC GET PAID state to the OPEN state, the other party will also transition to the OPEN state simultaneously. Lastly we notice that we have exhausted all manners in which a party can transition to the OPEN state, therefore we have proven that transitions of honest parties to the OPEN state happen simultaneously.

Now, given that  $\mathcal{S}$  internally simulates faithfully both LN parties and that  $\mathcal{G}_{\text{Chan}}$  relinquishes to  $\mathcal{S}$  complete control of the external communication of the parties as long as it does not halt, we deduce that  $\mathcal{S}$  replicates the behaviour of the aforementioned real world. By combining these facts with the consequences of the two Lemmas and the check that leads  $\mathcal{G}_{\text{Chan}}$  to halt if it fails (Fig. 20, l. 18), we deduce that if the conditions of Lemma 8 hold for the honest parties of  $\mathcal{G}_{\text{Chan}}$  and their kindred parties, then the functionality halts only with negligible probability.

In the second proof step, we show that if the conditions of Lemma 8 do not hold, then the check of Fig. 20, l. 18 never takes place. We first discuss the  $State_P = \text{IGNORED}$  case. We observe that the IGNORED State is a sink state, as there is no way to leave it once in. Additionally, for the balance check to happen,  $\mathcal{G}_{\text{Chan}}$  must receive (CLOSED,  $P$ ) by  $\mathcal{S}$  when  $State_P \neq \text{IGNORED}$  (Fig. 20, l. 9). We deduce that,

once  $State_P = \text{IGNORED}$ , the balance check will not happen. Moving to the case where  $State_P$  has never been OPEN, we observe that it is impossible to move to any of the states required by l. 9 of Fig. 20 without first having been in the OPEN state. Moreover if  $P = \text{Alice}$ , it is impossible to reach the OPEN state without receiving input (OPEN,  $c, \dots$ ) by  $\mathcal{E}$ . Lastly, as we have observed already, the three last conditions of Lemma 8 are always satisfied. We conclude that if the conditions to Lemma 8 do not hold, then the check of Fig. 20, l. 18 does not happen and therefore  $\mathcal{G}_{\text{Chan}}$  does not halt.

On aggregate,  $\mathcal{G}_{\text{Chan}}$  may only halt with negligible probability in the security parameter. ■

*Proof of Theorem 4:* By inspection of Figures 16 and 30 we can deduce that for a particular  $\mathcal{E}$ , in the ideal world execution  $\text{EXEC}_{\mathcal{S}, \mathcal{E}}^{\mathcal{G}_{\text{Chan}}^1, \mathcal{G}_{\text{Ledger}}}$ ,  $\mathcal{S}_{\mathcal{A}}$  simulates internally the two  $\Pi_{\text{Chan}}^1$  parties exactly as they would execute in  $\text{EXEC}_{\Pi_{\text{Chan}}^1, \mathcal{A}, \mathcal{E}}^{\mathcal{G}_{\text{Ledger}}}$ , the real world execution, in case  $\mathcal{G}_{\text{Chan}}^1$  does not halt. Indeed,  $\mathcal{G}_{\text{Chan}}^1$  only halts with negligible probability according to Lemma 3, therefore the two executions are computationally indistinguishable. ■

*Proof of Theorem 5:* The proof is exactly the same as that of Theorem 4, replacing superscripts 1 for  $n$ . ■

**Acknowledgements::** Research partly supported by PRIVILEGE: EU Project No. 780477 and the Blockchain Technology Laboratory – University of Edinburgh.



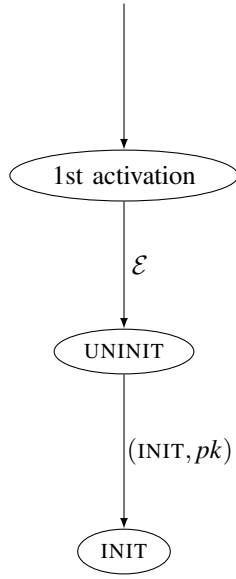


Figure 22:  $\mathcal{G}_{\text{Chan}}$  state machine up to INIT (both parties)

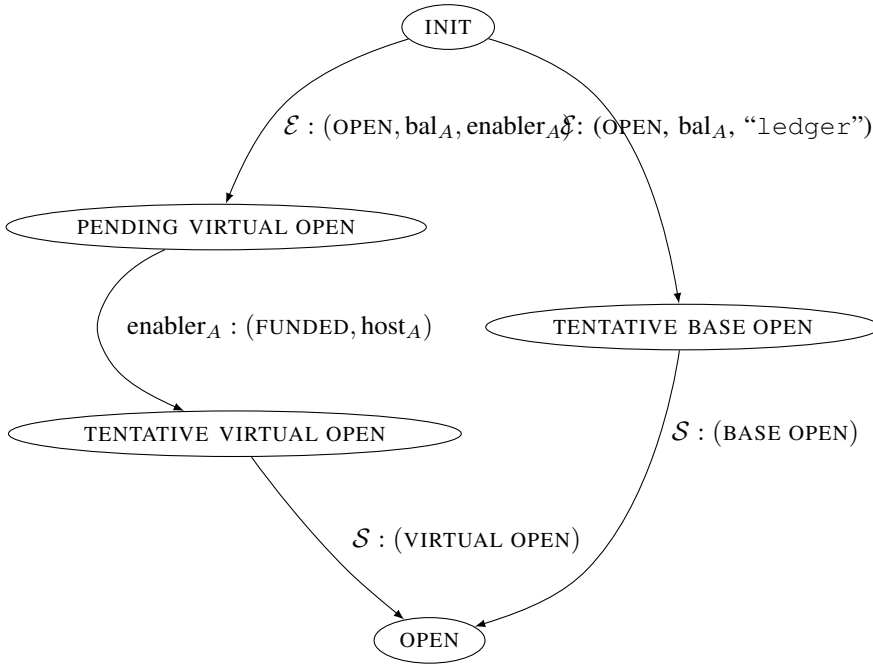


Figure 23:  $\mathcal{G}_{\text{Chan}}$  state machine from INIT up to OPEN (funder)

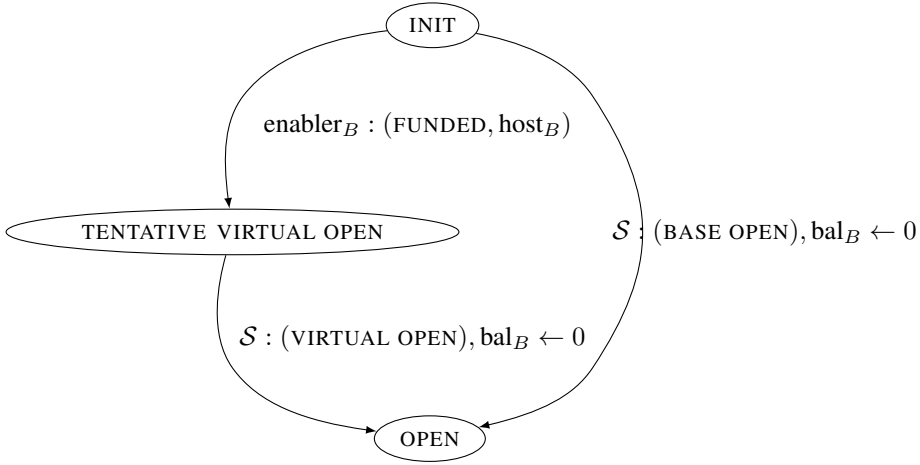


Figure 24:  $\mathcal{G}_{\text{Chan}}$  state machine from INIT up to OPEN (fundee)

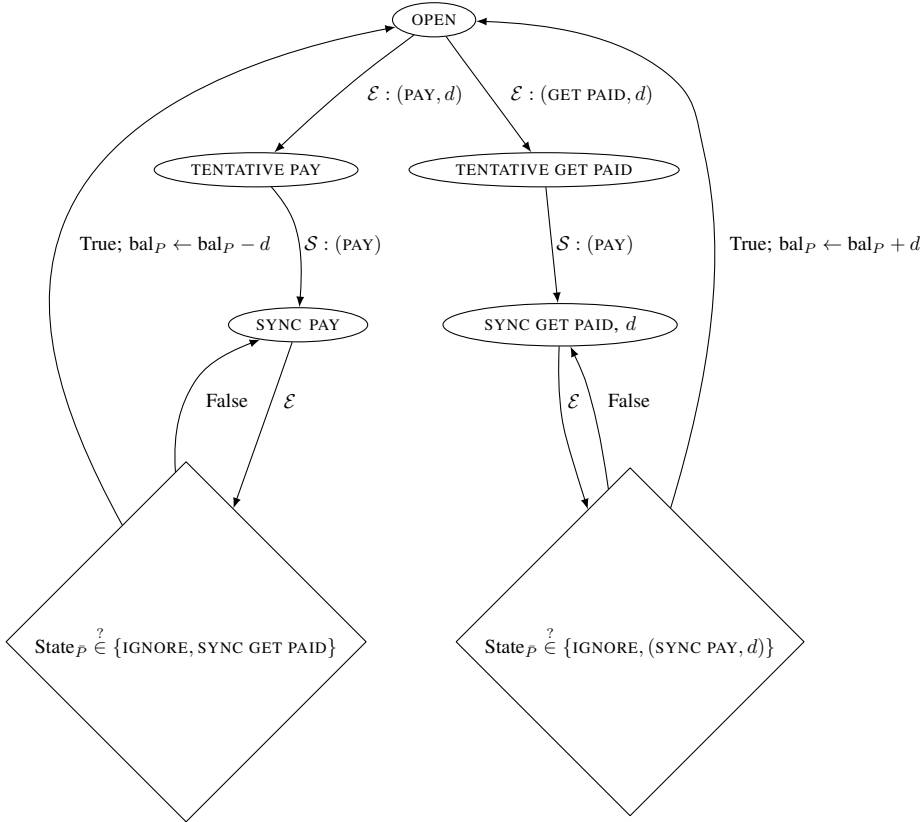


Figure 25:  $\mathcal{G}_{\text{Chan}}$  state machine for payments (both parties)

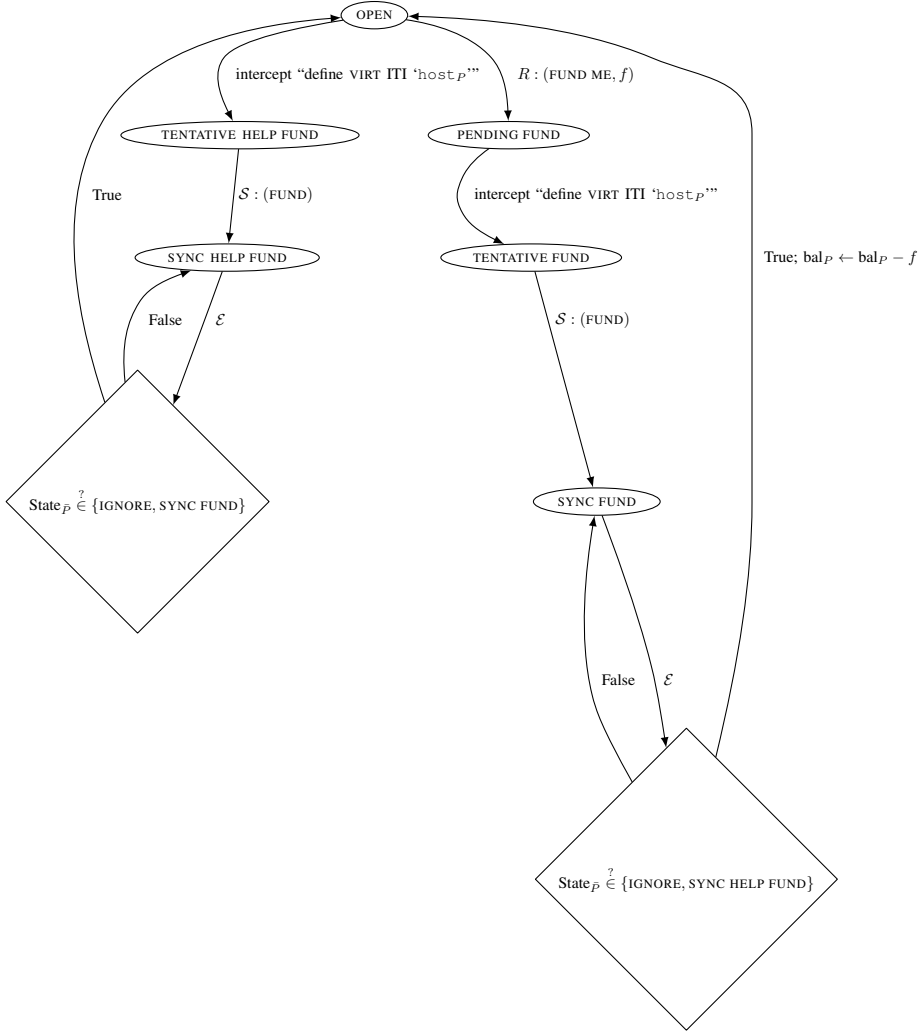


Figure 26:  $\mathcal{G}_{\text{Chan}}$  state machine for funding new virtuals (both parties)

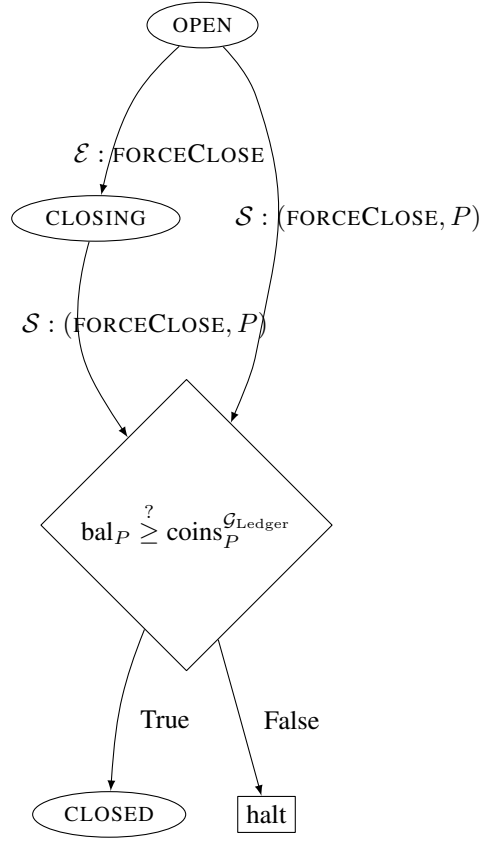


Figure 27:  $\mathcal{G}_{\text{Chan}}$  state machine for channel closure (both parties)

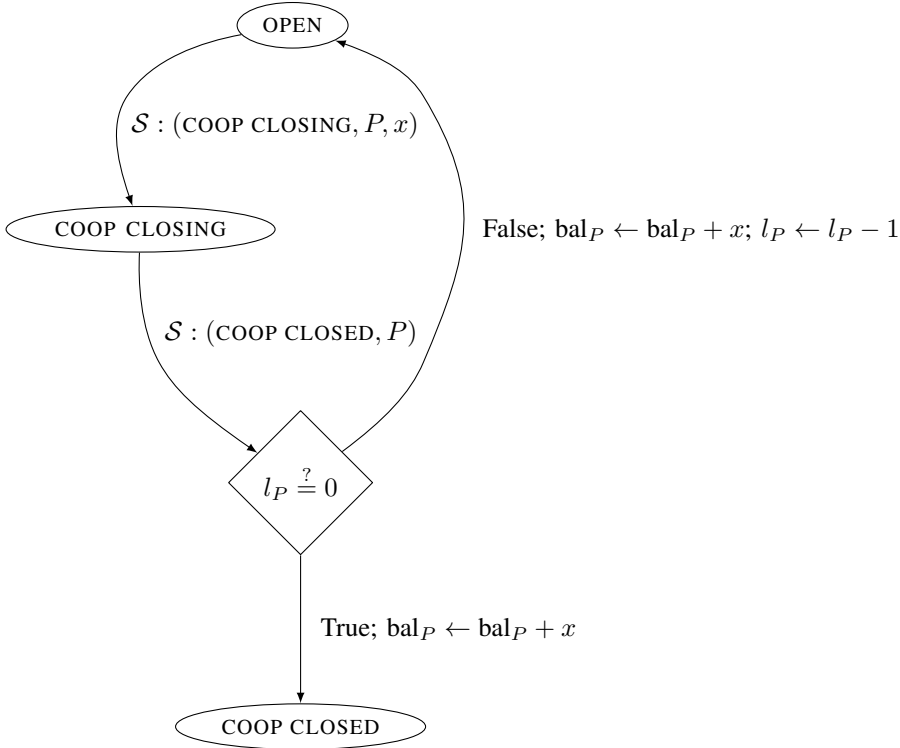


Figure 28:  $\mathcal{G}_{\text{Chan}}$  state machine for cooperative channel closure (all parties)



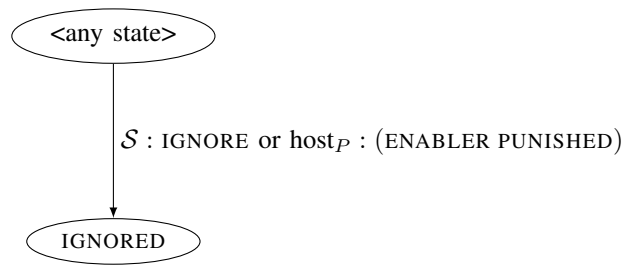


Figure 29:  $\mathcal{G}_{\text{Chan}}$  state machine for corruption, negligence or punishment of the counterparty of a lower layer (both parties)